به نام خدا

مرکز دانلود رایگان مهندسی مطالوره‌ای و مواد

www.Iran-mavad.com
MAGNETIC MATERIALS
Fundamentals and Applications

*Magnetic Materials* is an excellent introduction to the basics of magnetism, magnetic materials, and their applications in modern device technologies. Retaining the concise style of the original, this edition has been thoroughly revised to address significant developments in the field, including the improved understanding of basic magnetic phenomena, new classes of materials, and changes to device paradigms. With homework problems, solutions to selected problems, and a detailed list of references, *Magnetic Materials* continues to be the ideal book for a one-semester course and as a self-study guide for researchers new to the field.

New to this edition:

- Entirely new chapters on exchange-bias coupling, multiferroic and magnetoelectric materials, and magnetic insulators
- Revised throughout, with substantial updates to the chapters on magnetic recording and magnetic semiconductors, incorporating the latest advances in the field
- New example problems with worked solutions

**Nicola A. Spaldin** is a Professor in the Materials Department at the University of California, Santa Barbara. She is an enthusiastic and effective teacher, with experience ranging from developing and managing the UCSB Integrative Graduate Training Program to answering elementary school students’ questions online. Particularly renowned for her research in multiferroics and magnetoelectrics, her current research focuses on using electronic structure methods to design and understand materials that combine magnetism with additional functionalities. She was recently awarded the American Physical Society’s McGroddy Prize for New Materials for this work. She is also active in research administration, directing the UCSB/National Science Foundation International Center for Materials Research.

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژی
MAGNETIC MATERIALS
Fundamentals and Applications
Second edition

NICOLA A. SPALDIN
University of California, Santa Barbara

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسی مواد و مطالورزی
Magnus magnes ipse est globus terrestris.
William Gilbert, De Magnete. 1600.
مرجع مهندسی مواد و متالورژی

www.iran-mavad.com
# Contents

**Acknowledgments**

---

## I Basics

1. Review of basic magnetostatics  
   1.1 Magnetic field  
     - 1.1.1 Magnetic poles  
     - 1.1.2 Magnetic flux  
     - 1.1.3 Circulating currents  
     - 1.1.4 Ampère’s circuital law  
     - 1.1.5 Biot–Savart law  
     - 1.1.6 Field from a straight wire  
   1.2 Magnetic moment  
   1.3 Definitions  

Homework

---

## II Magnetization and magnetic materials

2. Magnetic induction and magnetization  
   2.1 Magnetic induction and magnetization  
   2.2 Flux density  
   2.3 Susceptibility and permeability  
   2.4 Hysteresis loops  
   2.5 Definitions  
   2.6 Units and conversions  

Homework

---

## III Atomic origins of magnetism

3. Solution of the Schrödinger equation for a free atom  
   - 3.1.1 What do the quantum numbers represent?  
   3.2 The normal Zeeman effect
Contents

3.3 Electron spin 30
3.4 Extension to many-electron atoms 31
  3.4.1 Pauli exclusion principle 32
3.5 Spin–orbit coupling 32
  3.5.1 Russell–Saunders coupling 32
  3.5.2 Hund’s rules 34
  3.5.3 $jj$ coupling 35
  3.5.4 The anomalous Zeeman effect 35
Homework 37

4 Diamagnetism 38
  4.1 Observing the diamagnetic effect 38
  4.2 Diamagnetic susceptibility 39
  4.3 Diamagnetic substances 41
  4.4 Uses of diamagnetic materials 42
  4.5 Superconductivity 42
    4.5.1 The Meissner effect 43
    4.5.2 Critical field 44
    4.5.3 Classification of superconductors 44
    4.5.4 Superconducting materials 44
    4.5.5 Applications for superconductors 46
Homework 46

5 Paramagnetism 48
  5.1 Langevin theory of paramagnetism 49
  5.2 The Curie–Weiss law 52
  5.3 Quenching of orbital angular momentum 54
  5.4 Pauli paramagnetism 55
    5.4.1 Energy bands in solids 56
    5.4.2 Free-electron theory of metals 58
    5.4.3 Susceptibility of Pauli paramagnets 60
  5.5 Paramagnetic oxygen 62
  5.6 Uses of paramagnets 63
Homework 64

6 Interactions in ferromagnetic materials 65
  6.1 Weiss molecular field theory 66
    6.1.1 Spontaneous magnetization 66
    6.1.2 Effect of temperature on magnetization 67
  6.2 Origin of the Weiss molecular field 69
    6.2.1 Quantum mechanics of the He atom 70
  6.3 Collective-electron theory of ferromagnetism 73
    6.3.1 The Slater–Pauling curve 76
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Homework</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Ferromagnetic domains</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Observing domains</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>Why domains occur</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.1</td>
<td>Magnetostatic energy</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2</td>
<td>Magnetocrystalline energy</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.3</td>
<td>Magnetostrictive energy</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Domain walls</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>Magnetization and hysteresis</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Homework</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Antiferromagnetism</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>Neutron diffraction</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>Weiss theory of antiferromagnetism</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.1</td>
<td>Susceptibility above $T_N$</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.2</td>
<td>Weiss theory at $T_N$</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.3</td>
<td>Spontaneous magnetization below $T_N$</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2.4</td>
<td>Susceptibility below $T_N$</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>What causes the negative molecular field?</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Uses of antiferromagnets</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Homework</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Ferrimagnetism</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>Weiss theory of ferrimagnetism</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1.1</td>
<td>Weiss theory above $T_C$</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1.2</td>
<td>Weiss theory below $T_C$</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>Ferrites</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1</td>
<td>The cubic ferrites</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.2</td>
<td>The hexagonal ferrites</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>The garnets</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>Half-metallic antiferromagnets</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Homework</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Summary of basics</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>Review of types of magnetic ordering</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>Review of physics determining types of magnetic ordering</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Magnetic phenomena</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Anisotropy</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>Magnetocrystalline anisotropy</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.1</td>
<td>Origin of magnetocrystalline anisotropy</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.2</td>
<td>Symmetry of magnetocrystalline anisotropy</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

11.2 Shape anisotropy 139
  11.2.1 Demagnetizing field 139

11.3 Induced magnetic anisotropy 141
  11.3.1 Magnetic annealing 141
  11.3.2 Roll anisotropy 142
  11.3.3 Explanation for induced magnetic anisotropy 142
  11.3.4 Other ways of inducing magnetic anisotropy 143

Homework 144

12 Nanoparticles and thin films 145
  12.1 Magnetic properties of small particles 145
    12.1.1 Experimental evidence for single-domain particles 147
    12.1.2 Magnetization mechanism 147
    12.1.3 Superparamagnetism 148
  12.2 Thin-film magnetism 152
    12.2.1 Structure 152
    12.2.2 Interfaces 153
    12.2.3 Anisotropy 153
    12.2.4 How thin is thin? 154
    12.2.5 The limit of two-dimensionality 154

13 Magnetoresistance 156
  13.1 Magnetoresistance in normal metals 157
  13.2 Magnetoresistance in ferromagnetic metals 158
    13.2.1 Anisotropic magnetoresistance 158
    13.2.2 Magnetoresistance from spontaneous magnetization 159
    13.2.3 Giant magnetoresistance 160
  13.3 Colossal magnetoresistance 164
    13.3.1 Superexchange and double exchange 164

Homework 168

14 Exchange bias 169
  14.1 Problems with the simple cartoon mechanism 171
    14.1.1 Ongoing research on exchange bias 172
  14.2 Exchange anisotropy in technology 173

III Device applications and novel materials

15 Magnetic data storage 177
  15.1 Introduction 177
  15.2 Magnetic media 181
    15.2.1 Materials used in magnetic media 181
    15.2.2 The other components of magnetic hard disks 183
  15.3 Write heads 183

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسی مواد و مالتورژی
## Contents

15.4 Read heads 185
15.5 Future of magnetic data storage 186

### 16 Magneto-optics and magneto-optic recording 189

16.1 Magneto-optics basics 189  
16.1.1 Kerr effect 189  
16.1.2 Faraday effect 191  
16.1.3 Physical origin of magneto-optic effects 191

16.2 Magneto-optic recording 193  
16.2.1 Other types of optical storage, and the future of magneto-optic recording 196

### 17 Magnetic semiconductors and insulators 197

17.1 Exchange interactions in magnetic semiconductors and insulators 198  
17.1.1 Direct exchange and superexchange 199  
17.1.2 Carrier-mediated exchange 199  
17.1.3 Bound magnetic polarons 200

17.2 II–VI diluted magnetic semiconductors – (Zn,Mn)Se 201  
17.2.1 Enhanced Zeeman splitting 201  
17.2.2 Persistent spin coherence 202  
17.2.3 Spin-polarized transport 203  
17.2.4 Other architectures 204

17.3 III–V diluted magnetic semiconductors – (Ga,Mn)As 204  
17.3.1 Rare-earth–group-V compounds – ErAs 207

17.4 Oxide-based diluted magnetic semiconductors 208

17.5 Ferromagnetic insulators 210  
17.5.1 Crystal-field and Jahn–Teller effects 210  
17.5.2 YTiO$_3$ and SeCuO$_3$ 211  
17.5.3 BiMnO$_3$ 213  
17.5.4 Europium oxide 214  
17.5.5 Double perovskites 215

17.6 Summary 215

### 18 Multiferroics 216

18.1 Comparison of ferromagnetism and other types of ferroic ordering 216  
18.1.1 Ferroelectrics 216  
18.1.2 Ferroelastics 219  
18.1.3 Ferrotoroidics 220

18.2 Multiferroics that combine magnetism and ferroelectricity 221  
18.2.1 The contra-indication between magnetism and ferroelectricity 222
18.2.2 Routes to combining magnetism and ferroelectricity 223
18.2.3 The magnetoelectric effect 225
18.3 Summary 228
Epilogue 229
Solutions to selected exercises 230
References 262
Index 270
Acknowledgments

This book has been tested on human subjects during a course on Magnetic Materials that I have taught at UC Santa Barbara for the last decade. I am immensely grateful to each class of students for suggesting improvements, hunting for errors, and letting me know when I am being boring. I hope that their enthusiasm is contagious.

Nicola Spaldin
Part I
Basics
1 Review of basic magnetostatics

Mention magnetics and an image arises of musty physics labs peopled by old codgers with iron filings under their fingernails.


Before we can begin our discussion of magnetic materials we need to understand some of the basic concepts of magnetism, such as what causes magnetic fields, and what effects magnetic fields have on their surroundings. These fundamental issues are the subject of this first chapter. Unfortunately, we are going to immediately run into a complication. There are two complementary ways of developing the theory and definitions of magnetism. The “physicist’s way” is in terms of circulating currents, and the “engineer’s way” is in terms of magnetic poles (such as we find at the ends of a bar magnet). The two developments lead to different views of which interactions are more fundamental, to slightly different-looking equations, and (to really confuse things) to two different sets of units. Most books that you’ll read choose one convention or the other and stick with it. Instead, throughout this book we are going to follow what happens in “real life” (or at least at scientific conferences on magnetism) and use whichever convention is most appropriate to the particular problem. We’ll see that it makes most sense to use Système International d’Unités (SI) units when we talk in terms of circulating currents, and centimeter–gram–second (cgs) units for describing interactions between magnetic poles.

To avoid total confusion later, we will give our definitions in this chapter and the next from both viewpoints, and provide a conversion chart for units and equations at the end of Chapter 2. Reference [1] provides an excellent light-hearted discussion of the unit systems used in describing magnetism.
1.1 Magnetic field

1.1.1 Magnetic poles

So let’s begin by defining the magnetic field, $H$, in terms of magnetic poles. This is the order in which things happened historically – the law of interaction between magnetic poles was discovered by Michell in England in 1750, and by Coulomb in France in 1785, a few decades before magnetism was linked to the flow of electric current. These gentlemen found empirically that the force between two magnetic poles is proportional to the product of their pole strengths, $p$, and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them,

$$F \propto \frac{p_1 p_2}{r^2}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.1)

This is analogous to Coulomb’s law for electric charges, with one important difference – scientists believe that single magnetic poles (magnetic monopoles) do not exist. They can, however, be approximated by one end of a very long bar magnet, which is how the experiments were carried out. By convention, the end of a freely suspended bar magnet which points towards magnetic north is called the north pole, and the opposite end is called the south pole.\(^1\) In cgs units, the constant of proportionality is unity, so

$$F = \frac{p_1 p_2}{r^2} \text{ (cgs)},$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.2)

where $r$ is in centimeters and $F$ is in dynes. Turning Eq. (1.2) around gives us the definition of pole strength:

A pole of unit strength is one which exerts a force of 1 dyne on another unit pole located at a distance of 1 centimeter.

The unit of pole strength does not have a name in the cgs system.

In SI units, the constant of proportionality in Eq. (1.1) is $\mu_0/4\pi$, so

$$F = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \frac{p_1 p_2}{r^2} \text{ (SI)},$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.3)

where $\mu_0$ is called the permeability of free space, and has the value $4\pi \times 10^{-7}$ weber/(ampere meter) (Wb/(Am)). In SI, the pole strength is measured in ampere meters (A m), the unit of force is of course the newton (N), and 1 newton $= 10^5$ dyne (dyn).

\(^1\) Note, however, that if we think of the earth’s magnetic field as originating from a bar magnet, then the south pole of the earth’s “bar magnet” is actually at the magnetic north pole!

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژی
1.1 Magnetic field

To understand what causes the force, we can think of the first pole generating a magnetic field, $H$, which in turn exerts a force on the second pole. So

$$F = \left( \frac{p_1}{r^2} \right) p_2 = H p_2, \quad (1.4)$$

giving, by definition,

$$H = \frac{p_1}{r^2}. \quad (1.5)$$

So:

A field of unit strength is one which exerts a force of 1 dyne on a unit pole.

By convention, the north pole is the source of the magnetic field, and the south pole is the sink, so we can sketch the magnetic field lines around a bar magnet as shown in Fig. 1.1.

The units of magnetic field are oersteds (Oe) in cgs units, so a field of unit strength has an intensity of 1 oersted. In the SI system, the analogous equation for the force one pole exerts on another is

$$F = \frac{\mu_0}{4\pi} \left( \frac{p_1}{r^2} \right) p_2 = \frac{\mu_0}{H} p_2, \quad (1.6)$$

yielding the expression for $H = \frac{1}{4\pi} \frac{p_1}{r^2}$ in units of amperes per meter (A/m); 1 Oe = $(1000/4\pi)$ A/m.

The earth’s magnetic field has an intensity of around one-tenth of an oersted, and the field at the end of a typical kindergarten toy bar magnet is around 5000 Oe.
1.1.2 Magnetic flux

It’s appropriate next to introduce another rather abstract concept, that of magnetic flux, \( \Phi \). The idea behind the term “flux” is that the field of a magnetic pole is conveyed to a distant place by something which we call a flux. Rigorously the flux is defined as the surface integral of the normal component of the magnetic field. This means that the amount of flux passing through unit area perpendicular to the field is equal to the field strength. So the field strength is equal to the amount of flux per unit area, and the flux is the field strength times the area,

\[
\Phi = HA. \quad (1.7)
\]

The unit of flux in cgs units, the oersted cm\(^2\), is called the maxwell (Mx). In SI units the expression for flux is

\[
\Phi = \mu_0 HA \quad (1.8)
\]

and the unit of flux is called the weber.

Magnetic flux is important because a changing flux generates an electric current in any circuit which it intersects. In fact we define an “electromotive force” \( \varepsilon \), equal to the rate of change of the flux linked with the circuit:

\[
\varepsilon = -\frac{d\Phi}{dt}. \quad (1.9)
\]

Equation (1.9) is Faraday’s law of electromagnetic induction. The electromotive force provides the potential difference which drives electric current around the circuit. The minus sign in Eq. (1.9) shows us that the current sets up a magnetic field which acts in the opposite direction to the magnetic flux. (This is known as Lenz’s law.)\(^2\)

The phenomenon of electromagnetic induction leads us to an alternative definition of flux, which is (in SI units):

A flux of 1 weber, when reduced to zero in 1 second, produces an electromotive force of 1 volt in a one-turn coil through which it passes.

1.1.3 Circulating currents

The next development in the history of magnetism took place in Denmark in 1820 when Oersted discovered that a magnetic compass needle is deflected in the neighborhood of an electric current. This was really a huge breakthrough because it unified two sciences. The new science of electromagnetism, which dealt with

---

\(^2\) We won’t cover electromagnetic induction in much detail in this book. A good introductory text is [2].

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و متالورژی
forces between moving charges and magnets, encompassed both electricity, which described the forces between charges, and magnetism, which described the forces between magnets.

Then Ampère discovered (again experimentally) that the magnetic field of a small current loop is identical to that of a small magnet. (By small we mean small with respect to the distance at which the magnetic field is observed.) The north pole of a bar magnet corresponds to current circulating in a counter-clockwise direction, whereas clockwise current is equivalent to the south pole, as shown in Fig. 1.2. In addition, Ampère hypothesized that all magnetic effects are due to current loops, and that the magnetic effects in magnetic materials such as iron are due to so-called “molecular currents.” This was remarkably insightful, considering that the electron would not be discovered for another 100 years! Today it’s believed that magnetic effects are caused by the orbital and spin angular momenta of electrons.

This leads us to an alternative definition of the magnetic field, in terms of current flow:

A current of 1 ampere passing through an infinitely long straight wire generates a field of strength $\frac{1}{2\pi}$ amperes per meter at a radial distance of 1 meter.

Of course the next obvious question to ask is what happens if the wire is not straight. What magnetic field does a general circuit produce? Ampère solved this one too.

### 1.1.4 Ampère’s circuital law

Ampère observed that the magnetic field generated by an electrical circuit depends on both the shape of the circuit and the amount of current being carried. In fact the total current, $I$, is equal to the line integral of the magnetic field around a closed path containing the current. In SI units,

$$\oint H \cdot dl = I.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.10)
1.1.5 Biot–Savart law

An equivalent statement to Ampère’s circuital law (which is sometimes easier to use for particular symmetries) is given by the Biot–Savart law. The Biot–Savart law gives the field contribution, $\delta H$, generated by a current flowing in an elemental length $\delta l$, of a conductor:

$$\delta H = \frac{1}{4\pi r^2} I \delta l \times \hat{u},$$

(1.11)

where $r$ is the radial distance from the conductor, and $\hat{u}$ is a unit vector along the radial direction.

1.1.6 Field from a straight wire

To show that these laws are equivalent, let’s use them both to calculate the magnetic field generated by a current flowing in a straight wire.

First let us use Ampère’s law. The geometry of the problem is shown in Fig. 1.3. If we assume that the field lines go around the wire in closed circles (by symmetry this is a fairly safe assumption) then the field, $H$, has the same value at all points on a circle concentric with the wire. This makes the line integral of Eq. (1.10) straightforward. It’s just

$$\oint H \cdot dl = 2\pi a H = I \quad \text{by Ampère’s law},$$

(1.12)

and so the field, $H$, at a distance $a$ from the wire is

$$H = \frac{I}{2\pi a}.$$  

(1.13)
1.1 Magnetic field

For this particular problem, the Biot–Savart law is somewhat less straightforward to apply. The geometry for calculating the field at a point P at a distance $a$ from the wire is shown in Fig. 1.4. Now

$$\delta H = \frac{1}{4\pi r^2} I \delta l \times \mathbf{u}$$

$$= \frac{1}{4\pi r^2} I |\delta l||\mathbf{u}| \sin \theta,$$

(1.14)

where $\theta$ is the angle between $\delta l$ and $\mathbf{u}$, which is equal to $(90^\circ + \alpha)$. So

$$\delta H = \frac{I}{4\pi r^2} \delta l \sin(90^\circ + \alpha)$$

$$= \frac{I}{4\pi r^2 \cos \alpha} \sin(90^\circ + \alpha),$$

(1.15)

since $\delta l = r \delta \alpha / \cos \alpha$.

But $\sin(90^\circ + \alpha) = \cos \alpha$, and $r = a / \cos \alpha$. So

$$\delta H = \frac{I \cos^2 \alpha a \delta \alpha}{4\pi a^2 \cos^2 \alpha} \cos \alpha$$

$$= \frac{I \cos \alpha \delta \alpha}{4\pi a}$$

(1.16)

and

$$H = \frac{I}{4\pi a} \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \cos \alpha \, d\alpha$$

$$= \frac{I}{4\pi a} [\sin \alpha]_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2}$$

$$= \frac{I}{2\pi a}.$$  

(1.17)

www.iran-mavad.com

مرجع مهندسي مواد و مثالورژی
The same result as that obtained using Ampère’s law! Clearly Ampère’s law was a better choice for this particular problem.

Unfortunately, analytic expressions for the field produced by a current can only be obtained for conductors with rather simple geometries. For more complicated shapes the field must be calculated numerically. Numerical calculation of magnetic fields is an active research area, and is tremendously important in the design of electromagnetic devices. A review is given in [3].

1.2 Magnetic moment

Next we need to introduce the concept of magnetic moment, which is the moment of the couple exerted on either a bar magnet or a current loop when it is in an applied field. Again we can define the magnetic moment either in terms of poles or in terms of currents.

Imagine a bar magnet is at an angle $\theta$ to a magnetic field, $H$, as shown in Fig. 1.5. We showed in Section 1.1.1 that the force on each pole, $F = pH$. So the torque acting on the magnet, which is just the force times the perpendicular distance from the center of mass, is

$$pH \sin \theta \frac{l}{2} + pH \sin \theta \frac{l}{2} = pHl \sin \theta = mH \sin \theta,$$

where $m = pl$, the product of the pole strength and the length of the magnet, is the magnetic moment. (Our notation here is to represent vector quantities by bold italic type, and their magnitudes by regular italic type.) This gives a definition:

The magnetic moment is the moment of the couple exerted on a magnet when it is perpendicular to a uniform field of 1 oersted.

Alternatively, if a current loop has area $A$ and carries a current $I$, then its magnetic moment is defined as

$$m = IA.$$
1.3 Definitions

The cgs unit of magnetic moment is the emu. In SI units, magnetic moment is measured in A m².

1.2.1 Magnetic dipole

A magnetic dipole is defined as either the magnetic moment, $m$, of a bar magnet in the limit of small length but finite moment, or the magnetic moment, $m$, of a current loop in the limit of small area but finite moment. The field lines around a magnetic dipole are shown in Fig. 1.6. The energy of a magnetic dipole is defined as zero when the dipole is perpendicular to a magnetic field. So the work done (in ergs) in turning through an angle $d\theta$ against the field is

$$dE = 2(pH \sin \theta) \frac{1}{2} d\theta = mH \sin \theta d\theta,$$

(1.20)

and the energy of a dipole at an angle $\theta$ to a magnetic field is

$$E = \int_{\pi/2}^{\theta} mH \sin \theta d\theta = -mH \cos \theta = -m \cdot H.$$

(1.21)

This expression for the energy of a magnetic dipole in a magnetic field is in cgs units. In SI units the energy is $E = -\mu_0 m \cdot H$. We will be using the concept of magnetic dipole, and this expression for its energy in a magnetic field, extensively throughout this book.

1.3 Definitions

Finally for this chapter, let’s review the definitions which we’ve introduced so far. Here we give all the definitions in cgs units.
1. **Magnetic pole**, \( p \). A pole of unit strength is one which exerts a force of 1 dyne on another unit pole located at a distance of 1 centimeter.

2. **Magnetic field**, \( H \). A field of unit strength is one which exerts a force of 1 dyne on a unit pole.

3. **Magnetic flux**, \( \Phi \). The amount of magnetic flux passing through an area \( A \) is equal to the product of the magnetic field strength and the area: \( \Phi = HA \).

4. **Magnetic moment**, \( m \). The magnetic moment of a magnet is the moment of the couple exerted on the magnet when it is perpendicular to a uniform field of 1 oersted. For a bar magnet, \( m = pl \), where \( p \) is the pole strength and \( l \) is the length of the magnet.

5. **Magnetic dipole**. The energy of a magnetic dipole in a magnetic field is the dot product of the magnetic moment and the magnetic field: \( E = -m \cdot H \).

**Homework**

**Exercises**

1.1 Using either the Biot–Savart law or Ampère's circuital law, derive a general expression for the magnetic field produced by a current flowing in a circular coil, at the center of the coil.

1.2 Consider a current flowing in a circular coil.
   (a) Derive an expression for the field produced by the current at a general point on the axis of the coil.
   (b) Could we derive a corresponding analytic expression for the field at a general, off-axis point? If not, how might we go about calculating magnetic fields for generalized geometries?

1.3 A classical electron is moving in a circular orbit of radius 1 Å (1 Å = 10^{-10} m) with angular momentum \( \hbar J \) s.
   (a) Calculate the field generated by the electron, at a distance of 3 Å from the center of the orbit, and along its axis.
   (b) Calculate the magnetic dipole moment of the electron, giving your answer in SI and cgs units.
   (c) Calculate the magnetic dipolar energy of the circulating electron when it is in the field generated by a second identical circulating electron at a distance of 3 Å away along its axis. Assume that the magnetic moment of the first electron is aligned parallel to the field from the second electron.

1.4 Derive an expression for the field \( H \) produced by “Helmholtz coils,” that is, two co-axial coils each of radius \( a \), and separated by a distance \( a \), at a point on the axis \( x \) between the coils:
   (a) with current flowing in the same sense in each coil, and
   (b) with current flowing in the opposite sense in each coil. In this case, derive the expression for \( dH/dx \) also.
For $a = 1$ m, and for both current orientations, calculate the value of the field halfway between the coils, and at $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{3}{4}$ along the axis. What qualitative feature of the field is significant in each case? Suggest a use for each pair of Helmholtz coils.

Further reading


Magnetization and magnetic materials

Modern technology would be unthinkable without magnetic materials and magnetic phenomena.


Now that we have covered some of the fundamentals of magnetism, we are allowed to start on the fun stuff! In this chapter we will learn about the magnetic field inside materials, which is generally quite different from the magnetic field outside. Most of the technology of magnetic materials is based on this simple statement, and this is why the study of magnetism is exciting for materials scientists.

2.1 Magnetic induction and magnetization

When a magnetic field, \( H \), is applied to a material, the response of the material is called its *magnetic induction*, \( B \). The relationship between \( B \) and \( H \) is a property of the material. In some materials (and in free space), \( B \) is a linear function of \( H \), but in general it is much more complicated, and sometimes it’s not even single-valued. The equation relating \( B \) and \( H \) is (in cgs units)

\[
B = H + 4\pi M, \tag{2.1}
\]

where \( M \) is the *magnetization* of the medium. The magnetization is defined as the magnetic moment per unit volume,

\[
M = \frac{m}{V} \text{ emu/cm}^3. \tag{2.2}
\]

\( M \) is a property of the material, and depends on both the individual magnetic moments of the constituent ions, atoms, or molecules, and on how these dipole moments interact with each other. The cgs unit of magnetization is the emu/cm\(^3\). One might expect that, since \( B = H \) in free space (where \( M = 0 \), the unit of
magnetic induction should be the same as that of magnetic field, that is, the oersted. In fact this is not the case, and in fact the unit of magnetic induction is called the gauss. Indeed, mixing up gauss and oersteds is a sure way to upset magnetism scientists at parties. If you have trouble remembering which is which, it can be safer to work in the SI units which we discuss next.

In SI units the relationship between $B$, $H$, and $M$ is

$$B = \mu_0(H + M),$$

(2.3)

where $\mu_0$ is the permeability of free space. The units of $M$ are obviously the same as those of $H$ (A/m), and those of $\mu_0$ are weber/(A m), also known as henry/m. So the units of $B$ are weber/m$^2$, or tesla (T); 1 gauss = $10^{-4}$ tesla.

### 2.2 Flux density

The magnetic induction, $B$, is the same thing as the density of flux, $\Phi$, inside the medium. So within a material $B = \Phi/A$, by analogy with $H = \Phi/A$ in free space. In general the flux density inside a material is different from that outside. In fact magnetic materials can be classified according to the difference between their internal and external flux.

If $\Phi$ inside is less than $\Phi$ outside then the material is known as diamagnetic. Examples of diamagnetic materials include Bi and He. These materials tend to exclude the magnetic field from their interior. We’ll see later that the atoms or ions which make up diamagnetic materials have zero magnetic dipole moment. If $\Phi$ inside is slightly more than $\Phi$ outside then the material is either paramagnetic (e.g. Na or Al) or antiferromagnetic (e.g. MnO or FeO). In many paramagnetic and antiferromagnetic materials, the constituent atoms or ions have a magnetic dipole moment. In paramagnets these dipole moments are randomly oriented, and in antiferromagnets they are ordered antiparallel to each other so that in both cases the overall magnetization is zero. Finally, if $\Phi$ inside is very much greater than $\Phi$ outside then the material is either ferromagnetic or ferrimagnetic. In ferromagnets, the magnetic dipole moments of the atoms tend to line up in the same direction. Ferrimagnets are somewhat like antiferromagnets, in that the dipoles align antiparallel; however, some of the dipole moments are larger than others, so the material has a net overall magnetic moment. Ferromagnets and ferrimagnets tend to concentrate magnetic flux in their interiors. Figure 2.1 shows these different kinds of magnetic materials schematically. The reasons for the different types of ordering, and the resulting material properties, are the subjects of much of the rest of this book.
2.3 Susceptibility and permeability

The properties of a material are defined not only by the magnetization, or the magnetic induction, but by the way in which these quantities vary with the applied magnetic field.

The ratio of $M$ to $H$ is called the susceptibility:

$$\chi = \frac{M}{H} \quad \text{emu/cm}^3 \text{ Oe}. \quad (2.4)$$

The susceptibility indicates how responsive a material is to an applied magnetic field. (Sometimes the symbol $\kappa$ is used for the susceptibility per unit volume; then $\chi = \kappa/\rho$ emu/(g Oe) is the susceptibility per unit mass.)

The ratio of $B$ to $H$ is called the permeability:

$$\mu = \frac{B}{H} \quad \text{gauss/Oe}; \quad (2.5)$$

$\mu$ indicates how permeable the material is to the magnetic field. A material which concentrates a large amount of flux density in its interior has a high permeability. Using the relationship $B = H + 4\pi M$ gives us the relationship (in cgs units) between permeability and susceptibility:

$$\mu = 1 + 4\pi \chi. \quad (2.6)$$
2.3 Susceptibility and permeability

Note that in SI units the susceptibility is dimensionless, and the permeability is in units of henry/m. The corresponding relationship between permeability and susceptibility in SI units is

\[ \frac{\mu}{\mu_0} = 1 + \chi, \]

where \( \mu_0 \) (see Eq. (1.3)) is the permeability in free space.

Graphs of \( M \) or \( B \) versus \( H \) are called magnetization curves, and are characteristic of the type of material. Let’s look at a few, for the most common types of magnetic materials.

The magnetizations of diamagnetic, paramagnetic, and antiferromagnetic materials are plotted schematically as a function of applied field in Fig. 2.2. For all these materials the \( M-H \) curves are linear. Rather large applied fields are required to cause rather small changes in magnetization, and no magnetization is retained when the applied field is removed. For diamagnets, the slope of the \( M-H \) curve is negative, so the susceptibility is small and negative, and the permeability is slightly less than 1. For paramagnets and antiferromagnets the slope is positive and the susceptibility and permeability are correspondingly small and positive, and slightly greater than 1, respectively.

Figure 2.3 shows schematic magnetization curves for ferrimagnets and ferromagnets. The first point to note is that the axis scales are completely different from those in Fig. 2.2. In this case, a much larger magnetization is obtained on application of a much smaller external field. Second, the magnetization saturates – above a certain applied field, an increase in field causes only a very small increase in magnetization. Clearly both \( \chi \) and \( \mu \) are large and positive, and are functions of the applied field. Finally, decreasing the field to zero after saturation does not reduce the magnetization to zero. This phenomenon is called hysteresis, and is very
important in technological applications. For example the fact that ferromagnetic and ferrimagnetic materials retain their magnetization in the absence of a field allows them to be made into permanent magnets.

### 2.4 Hysteresis loops

We’ve just seen that reducing the field to zero does not reduce the magnetization of a ferromagnet to zero. In fact ferromagnets and ferrimagnets continue to show interesting behavior when the field is reduced to zero and then reversed in direction. The graph of $B$ (or $M$) versus $H$ which is traced out is called a *hysteresis loop*. Figure 2.4 shows a schematic of a generic hysteresis loop – this time we’ve plotted $B$ versus $H$. 

---

Figure 2.3 Schematic magnetization curves for ferri- and ferromagnets.

Figure 2.4 Hysteresis loop for a ferro- or ferrimagnet.
Our magnetic material starts at the origin in an unmagnetized state, and the magnetic induction follows the curve from 0 to $B_s$ as the field is increased in the positive direction. Note that, although the magnetization is constant after saturation (as we saw in Fig. 2.3), $B$ continues to increase, because $B = H + 4\pi M$. The value of $B$ at $B_s$ is called the saturation induction, and the curve of $B$ from the demagnetized state to $B_s$ is called the normal induction curve.

When $H$ is reduced to zero after saturation, the induction decreases from $B_s$ to $B_r$ – the residual induction, or retentivity. The reversed field required to reduce the induction to zero is called the coercivity, $H_c$. Depending on the value of the coercivity, ferromagnetic materials are classified as either hard or soft. A hard magnet needs a large field to reduce its induction to zero (or conversely to saturate the magnetization). A soft magnet is easily saturated, but also easily demagnetized. Hard and soft magnetic materials obviously have totally complementary applications!

When the reversed $H$ is increased further, saturation is achieved in the reverse direction. The loop that is traced out is called the major hysteresis loop. Both tips represent magnetic saturation, and there is inversion symmetry about the origin. If the initial magnetization is interrupted (for example at point a), and $H$ is reversed, then re-applied, then the induction follows a minor hysteresis loop.

The suitability of ferrimagnetic and ferromagnetic materials for particular applications is determined largely from characteristics shown by their hysteresis loops. We’ll discuss the origin of hysteresis, and the relationship between hysteresis loops and material properties, in the later chapters devoted to ferromagnetic and ferrimagnetic materials.

### 2.5 Definitions

Let’s review the new definitions which we have introduced in this chapter.

1. **Magnetic induction, $B$**. The magnetic induction is the response of a material to a magnetic field, $H$.
2. **Magnetization, $M$**. The magnetization is the total magnetic moment per unit volume.
3. **Susceptibility, $\chi$**. The susceptibility is the ratio of $M$ to $H$.
4. **Permeability, $\mu$**. The permeability is the ratio of $B$ to $H$.

### 2.6 Units and conversions

Finally for this chapter we provide a conversion chart between cgs and SI for the units and equations which we have introduced so far.

www.iran-mavad.com

مرجع مهندسی مواد و متابولژی
Magnetization and magnetic materials

**Equation conversions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cgs</th>
<th>SI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Force between poles</td>
<td>$F = \frac{p_1 p_2}{r^2}$ (dyne)</td>
<td>$F = \frac{\mu_0 p_1 p_2}{4\pi r^2}$ (newton)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field of a pole</td>
<td>$H = \frac{p}{r^2}$ (oersted)</td>
<td>$H = \frac{p}{r^2}$ (ampere/m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetic induction</td>
<td>$B = H + 4\pi M$ (gauss)</td>
<td>$B = \mu_0(H + M)$ (tesla)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy of a dipole</td>
<td>$E = -m \cdot H$ (erg)</td>
<td>$E = -\mu_0 m \cdot H$ (joule)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susceptibility</td>
<td>$\chi = \frac{M}{H}$ (emu/(cm³ oersted))</td>
<td>$\chi = \frac{M}{H}$ (dimensionless)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permeability</td>
<td>$\mu = \frac{B}{H} = 1 + 4\pi \chi$ (gauss/oersted)</td>
<td>$\mu = \frac{B}{H} = \mu_0(1 + \chi)$ (henry/m)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unit conversions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$F$</th>
<th>1 dyne</th>
<th>$= 10^{-5}$ newton</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$H$</td>
<td>1 oersted</td>
<td>$= 79.58$ ampere/m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$B$</td>
<td>1 gauss</td>
<td>$= 10^{-4}$ tesla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E$</td>
<td>1 erg</td>
<td>$= 10^{-7}$ joule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Phi$</td>
<td>1 maxwell</td>
<td>$= 10^{-3}$ weber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$M$</td>
<td>1 emu/cm³</td>
<td>$= 12.57 \times 10^{-4}$ weber/m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu$</td>
<td>1 gauss/oersted</td>
<td>$= 1.257 \times 10^{-6}$ henry/m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is often useful to convert the SI units into their fundamental constituents, ampere (A), meter (m), kilogram (kg), and second (s). Here are some examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>newton (N)</th>
<th>$= \text{kg m/s}^2$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>joule (J)</td>
<td>$= \text{kg m}^2/\text{s}^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tesla (T)</td>
<td>$= \text{kg}/(\text{s}^2 \text{A})$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weber (Wb)</td>
<td>$= \text{kg m}^2/(\text{s}^2 \text{A})$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>henry (H)</td>
<td>$= \text{kg m}^2/(\text{s}^2 \text{A}^2)$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Homework**

**Exercises**

2.1 A cylindrical bar magnet 10 inches long and 1 inch in diameter has a magnetic moment of 10 000 erg/Oe.

(a) What is its magnetic moment in SI units?
(b) What is its magnetization in both cgs and SI units?
(c) What current would have to be passed through a 100-turn solenoid of the same dimensions to give it the same magnetic moment?

2.2 A material contains one Fe$^{3+}$ ion, with magnetic moment $m = 5 \mu_B$, and one Cr$^{3+}$ ion, with magnetic moment $m = 3 \mu_B$ per unit cell. The Fe$^{3+}$ ions are arranged parallel to each other and antiparallel to the Cr$^{3+}$ ions. Given that the unit cell volume is 120 Å³, what is the magnetization of the material? Give your answer in SI and cgs units.

To think about
What does it mean to have a permeability of zero? What is the corresponding value of susceptibility? Can you think of any materials that have these properties?

Further reading
3

Atomic origins of magnetism

Only in a few cases have results of direct chemical interest been obtained by the accurate solution of the Schrödinger equation.

Linus Pauling, *The Nature of the Chemical Bond*, 1960

The purpose of this chapter is to understand the origin of the magnetic dipole moment of free atoms. We will make the link between Ampère’s ideas about circulating currents, and the electronic structure of atoms. We’ll see that it is the angular momenta of the electrons in atoms which correspond to Ampère’s circulating currents and give rise to the magnetic dipole moment.

In fact we will see that the magnetic moment of a free atom in the absence of a magnetic field consists of two contributions. First is the orbital angular momenta of the electrons circulating the nucleus. In addition each electron has an extra contribution to its magnetic moment arising from its “spin.” The spin and orbital angular momenta combine to produce the observed magnetic moment.¹

By the end of this chapter we will understand some of the quantum mechanics which explains why some isolated atoms have a permanent magnetic dipole moment and others do not. We will develop some rules for determining the magnitudes of these dipole moments. Later in the book we will look at what happens to these dipole moments when we combine the atoms into molecules and solids.

### 3.1 Solution of the Schrödinger equation for a free atom

We begin with a review of atomic theory to show how solution of the Schrödinger equation leads to quantization of the orbital angular momentum of the electrons. The quantization is important because it means that the atomic dipole moments are

¹ In the presence of an external field there is a third contribution to the magnetic moment of a free atom, arising from the change in orbital angular momentum due to the applied field. We will investigate this further in Chapter 4 when we discuss diamagnetism.
3.1 Solution of the Schrödinger equation for a free atom

restricted to certain values and to certain orientations with respect to an external field. We’ll see later that these restrictions have a profound effect on the properties of magnetic materials.

For simplicity we’ll consider the hydrogen atom, which consists of a single negatively charged electron bound to a positively charged nucleus. The potential energy of the hydrogen atom is just the Coulomb interaction between the electron and the nucleus, $-e^2/4\pi\varepsilon_0 r$, where $e$ is the charge on the electron and $\varepsilon_0$ is the permittivity of free space. So the Schrödinger equation, $H\Psi = E\Psi$, becomes

$$ -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_e} \nabla^2 \Psi - \frac{e^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 r} \Psi = E\Psi, \tag{3.1} $$

where $m_e$ is the mass of the electron and

$$ \nabla^2 = \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} r^2 + \frac{1}{r^2} \left[ \frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \phi^2} + \frac{1}{\sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \sin \theta \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \right] \tag{3.2} $$

in spherical coordinates. (Remember that the symbol $H$ in the Schrödinger equation stands for the Hamiltonian, which is the sum of the kinetic and potential energies; don’t confuse it with the magnetic field!)

For bound states (with energy, $E$, less than that of a separated electron and nucleus), this Schrödinger equation has the well-known solution

$$ \Psi_{nlm_l}(r, \theta, \phi) = R_{nl}(r) Y_{lm_l}(\theta, \phi). \tag{3.3} $$

(You can find a complete derivation in most quantum mechanics textbooks – my personal favorite is in the Feynman Lectures on Physics, [4].) We see that the wavefunction $\Psi$ separates into a product of a radial function, $R$, which depends on the distance of the electron from the nucleus $r$, and an angular function, $Y$, which depends on the angular coordinates $\theta$ and $\phi$; this separation is a result of the spherical symmetry of the Coulomb potential. The connection of the electronic wavefunction to experimental observables is again the topic of quantum mechanics textbooks; one important relationship is that the probability of finding an electron in some infinitesimal region at a position $r$ is given by $|\Psi_{nlm_l}(r, \theta, \phi)|^2$. Although the details are beyond the scope of this discussion, the requirement that the wavefunction be physically meaningful restricts the quantum numbers $n$, $l$, and $m_l$ to the following values:

$$ n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{3.4} $$

$$ l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n - 1 \tag{3.5} $$

$$ m_l = -l, -l + 1, \ldots, l - 1, l. \tag{3.6} $$

These in turn restrict the allowed solutions to the Schrödinger equation to only certain radial and angular distributions.

www.iran-mavad.com

مرجع مهندسي مواد و مталورژی
Table 3.1 *Radial dependence of the hydrogen atomic orbitals.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>n</th>
<th>l</th>
<th>$R_{nl}(r)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\left(\frac{1}{a_0}\right)^{3/2} 2e^{-r/a_0}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\left(\frac{1}{a_0}\right)^{3/2} \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}} \left(2 - \frac{r}{a_0}\right) e^{-r/2a_0}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$\left(\frac{1}{a_0}\right)^{3/2} \frac{1}{2\sqrt{6}} \frac{r}{a_0} e^{-r/2a_0}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3.1 Radial parts of the hydrogen atom wavefunctions with $l = 0$ and $l = 1$.

The $R_{nl}(r)$ which give the radial part of the wavefunction are special functions called the *associated Laguerre functions*, which are each specified by the quantum numbers $n$ and $l$. The first few Laguerre functions are tabulated in Table 3.1. The radial parts of the hydrogen atom wavefunctions with $n = 1, 2, 3$ and $l = 0$ (the s orbitals) and $n = 2$ and $3$ and $l = 1$ (the p orbitals) are plotted in Fig. 3.1. Notice that as $n$ increases the wavefunctions extend further from the nucleus; this will be important later. Also, the number of times the wavefunction crosses the zero axis (the number of nodes in the wavefunction) is equal to $n - l - 1$.

The $Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi)$ which specify the angular part of the wavefunctions are also special functions – the spherical harmonics – labeled by $l$ and $m_l$. The first few spherical harmonics are tabulated in Table 3.2.

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسی مواد و مالتورژی
### 3.1 Solution of the Schrödinger equation for a free atom

#### 3.1.1 What do the quantum numbers represent?

As discussed above, the \( n \), \( l \), and \( m_l \) labels are quantum numbers, and they determine the form of the allowed solutions to the Schrödinger equation for the hydrogen atom. The \( n \) and \( l \) labels are called the principal and angular momentum quantum numbers, respectively, and the label \( m_l \) is called the magnetic quantum number. These quantum numbers in turn determine many other properties of the electron in the atom.

**The principal quantum number, \( n \)**

The principal quantum number, \( n \), determines the energy, \( E_n \), of the electron level. (You might remember the \( n \) label from discussions of the Bohr atom in elementary atomic theory texts.) In the hydrogen atom the energy is given by

\[
E_n = -\left(\frac{m_e e^4}{32\pi^2\epsilon_0^2\hbar^2}\right)\frac{1}{n^2},
\]

where \( \hbar = h/2\pi \) is Planck’s constant. Levels with smaller values of \( n \) (with \( n = 1 \) being the smallest that is allowed) have lower energy. Therefore, in the ground state of the hydrogen atom, the single electron occupies the \( n = 1 \) energy level. Electrons with a particular \( n \) value are said to form the \( n \)th electron “shell.” There are \( n^2 \) electronic orbitals in shell \( n \), each of which is allowed to contain a maximum of two electrons. Although the \( n \) value does not directly determine any magnetic properties, we’ll see later that it influences the magnetic properties of an atom because it controls which values of the \( l \) and \( m_l \) quantum numbers are permitted.
Atomic origins of magnetism

The orbital quantum number, $l$

The orbital quantum number, $l$, determines the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum of the electron. The magnitude of the orbital angular momentum, $|L|$, of an individual electron is related to the angular momentum quantum number, $l$, by

$$|L| = \sqrt{l(l+1)} \hbar. \quad (3.8)$$

(We won’t derive this result here – it comes from the fact that the spherical harmonics satisfy the equation $\nabla^2 Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = -l(l+1)Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi)$. Again, [4] has an excellent derivation.)

Values of $l$ equal to 0, 1, 2, 3, etc., correspond respectively to the familiar labels s, p, d, and f for the atomic orbitals. (The labels s, p, d, and f are legacies from old spectroscopic observations of sharp, principal, diffuse, and fundamental series of lines.) We see that the s orbitals, with $l = 0$, and consequently $|L| = 0$, have zero orbital angular momentum. So the electrons in s orbitals make no contribution to the magnetic dipole of an atom from their orbital angular momentum. Similarly the p electrons, with $l = 1$, have an orbital angular momentum of magnitude $|L| = \sqrt{2} \hbar$, and so on for the orbitals of higher angular momentum.

The value of the angular momentum quantum number affects the radial distribution of the wavefunction, as we saw in Fig. 3.1. The s electrons, with $l = 0$, have non-zero values at the nucleus, whereas the p electrons, with $l = 1$, have zero probability of being found at the nucleus. We can think of this as resulting from the orbital angular momentum’s centrifugal force flinging the electron away from the nucleus.

Since $l$ can take integer values from 0 to $n - 1$, the $n = 1$ level contains only s orbitals, the $n = 2$ level contains s and p, and the $n = 3$ level contains s, p, and d orbitals. Here we see the value of the $n$ quantum number influencing the allowed angular momentum of the electron.

In our treatment of the hydrogen atom, all s, p, d, etc., orbitals with the same $n$ value have the same energy. We’ll see later that this is not the case in atoms with more than one electron, because the interactions between the electrons affect the relative energies of states with different angular momentum.

The magnetic quantum number, $m_l$

The orientation of the orbital angular momentum with respect to a magnetic field is also quantized, and is labeled by the magnetic quantum number, $m_l$, which is allowed to take integer values from $-l$ to $+l$. So (for example) a p orbital, with $l = 1$, can have $m_l$ values of $-1$, 0, or $+1$. This means that p orbitals can exist with three orientations relative to an externally applied magnetic field.

The component of angular momentum along the field direction is equal to $m_l \hbar$. For a p orbital this gives components of $+\hbar$, 0, or $-\hbar$, as illustrated in Fig. 3.2.
3.2 The normal Zeeman effect

The fact that electrons are charged particles carrying angular momentum means that they have a magnetic moment, similar to that of a current of charged particles circulating in a loop of wire. We can see direct evidence for this magnetic moment by observing the change in the atomic absorption spectrum in the presence of an external magnetic field.

In Chapter 1 we saw that the energy of a magnetic dipole moment, \( \mathbf{m} \), in a magnetic field, \( \mathbf{H} \), is given by

\[
E = -\mu_0 \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{H}
\]  

(in SI units).

So the component of orbital angular momentum along the field direction is always smaller than the total orbital angular momentum. (Remember the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum for a p orbital is \( \sqrt{l(l+1)} \hbar = \sqrt{2} \hbar \).) This means that the orbital angular momentum vector can never point directly along the direction of the field, and instead it precesses in a cone around the field direction, like a gyroscope tipped off its axis. The cones of precession are shown schematically in the figure by narrow lines. This off-axis precession is an intrinsic feature of the quantum mechanics of angular momentum – only in macroscopic objects, such as a spinning top, is the value of \( \sqrt{l(l+1)} \) so close to \( l \) that the object appears to be able to rotate directly around the \( z \) axis.

For all three p orbitals, the component of angular momentum perpendicular to the applied field averages to zero.
We also showed that the magnetic dipole moment of a circulating current is given by

\[ m = IA \]  

in the direction perpendicular to the plane of the current, \( I \), where \( A \) is the area of the circulating current loop.

By definition, the current, \( I \), is just the charge passing per unit time. If we assume that the current is produced entirely by an electron orbiting at a distance \( a \) from the nucleus in an atom, then the magnitude of that current is equal to the charge on the electron multiplied by its velocity, \( v \), divided by the circumference of the orbit \((2\pi a)\):

\[ I = \frac{e|v|}{2\pi a} \]  

Here the minus sign occurs because the charge on the electron is negative, and so the direction of current flow is opposite to that of the electron motion.

The area of the orbit is \( A = \pi a^2 \), so the magnetic dipole moment

\[ m = IA = \frac{e|va|}{2} = -\left|\frac{e|va|}{2}\right|. \]  

But the angular momentum of any object going round in a circle is the mass times the velocity times the distance from the axis (\( m_eva \) in our case). We stated in Section 3.1 that the orbital angular momentum projected onto the magnetic field axis is only allowed to take the values \( ml \). So the angular momentum projected onto the field axis is

\[ m_eva = ml \]  

giving

\[ v = \frac{ml}{m_ea}. \]  

So, substituting for \( v \) in Eq. (3.12) gives the expression for the magnetic dipole moment about the field axis:

\[ m = -\frac{e\hbar}{2m_e}ml = -\mu_Bml. \]  

Note that the dipole moment vector points in the opposite direction to the angular momentum vector, because the charge on the electron is negative. The corresponding expression for the magnitude of the orbital contribution to the magnetic moment (not projected onto the field axis) is

\[ m = \mu_B\sqrt{l(l + 1)}, \]  

where we use the un-bold \( m \) to represent the magnitude of the magnetic moment.
3.2 The normal Zeeman effect

The normal Zeeman effect is a phenomenon that occurs in atomic physics when an electron in an atomic orbital with non-zero orbital angular momentum is subjected to an external magnetic field. The energy of the electron in a magnetic field is given by:

$$E = \mu_0 \frac{e}{2m_e} m_l H = \mu_B m_l H.$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.17)

(The corresponding expression in cgs units is $E = \mu_B m_l H$.) The quantity $\mu_B = e \hbar / 2m_e c$ is called the Bohr magneton, and is the elementary unit of orbital magnetic moment in an atom. Its value is $9.274 \times 10^{-24}$ J/T. (In cgs units it is written as $\mu_B = e\hbar / 2m_e c = 0.927 \times 10^{-20}$ erg/Oe, where $c$ is the velocity of light.)

Then substituting for $m$ along the field direction into Eq. (3.9) gives the energy of the electron in a magnetic field:

The example of a normal Zeeman splitting of a transition between an s orbital and a p orbital is shown in Fig. 3.3. In the absence of an applied field, the s and p orbitals each have one energy level. The s energy level does not split when a field is applied, since the s electron has no orbital angular momentum and therefore no orbital magnetic moment. The p level, on the other hand, splits into three, corresponding to $m_l$ values of $-1, 0, \text{ and } 1$. As a result three lines are observed in the normal Zeeman spectrum.
Atomic origins of magnetism

3.3 Electron spin

To fully specify the state of an electron in an atom, we need to include two more quantum numbers, associated with the spin of the electron around its own axis. The spin of an electron is not predicted by the Schrödinger equation because it is the result of relativistic effects which are not included in the Schrödinger equation. If instead we had solved the relativistic Dirac equation, these additional quantum numbers would have fallen out naturally, but the mathematics would have been much more complicated!

The first new quantum number, the spin quantum number, is labeled $s$, and always has the value $\frac{1}{2}$. The magnitude of the spin angular momentum of an individual electron, $|\mathbf{S}|$, is given by

$$|\mathbf{S}| = \sqrt{s(s+1)} \hbar = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \hbar. \quad (3.18)$$

This is analogous to our earlier expression for the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum, $|\mathbf{L}|$.

The final quantum number, $m_s$, is the spin analog to the magnetic quantum number, $m_l$. It arises because the spin angular momentum with respect to a magnetic field is quantized, with $m_s$ allowed to take values of $-\frac{1}{2}$ and $+\frac{1}{2}$ only. The component of angular momentum along the field direction is given by $m_s \hbar = \pm \hbar/2$. Again we see that the component of spin angular momentum along the applied field is smaller than the spin angular momentum magnitude. Therefore the spin angular momentum vector cannot point directly along the applied field, and instead it precesses on a cone about the field axis, as shown in Fig. 3.4.
3.4 Extension to many-electron atoms

By analogy with our earlier derivation of the orbital magnetic moment along the field direction, we might expect that the spin magnetic moment along the field direction would be given by $m = -\mu_B m_s$, and the magnitude of the spin magnetic moment by $m = \mu_B \sqrt{s(s+1)}$. In fact this assumption is incorrect, and the theory of quantum electrodynamics instead gives

$$m = -g_e \mu_B m_s,$$

(3.19)

and

$$m = g_e \mu_B \sqrt{s(s+1)},$$

(3.20)

where $g_e = 2.002319$ is called the $g$-factor of the electron. It will be sufficient for our purposes to take $g_e = 2$, so that the spin magnetic moment along the field direction of a single electron is 1 Bohr magneton. The fact that $g_e$ is not unity manifests itself in a number of important ways, and in particular it will show up later in our discussion of the anomalous Zeeman effect.

3.4 Extension to many-electron atoms

In our hydrogen atom example, we saw that the wavefunction of an electron was completely separable into radial and angular parts, and that the energy of an electron depended only on the principal quantum number, $n$. In all atoms other than hydrogen, there is more than one electron, and the electrons interact with each other as well as with the nucleus. The additional interactions produce a much more complicated Schrödinger equation, which can no longer be solved analytically.

One result of this “many-body” effect is that the energy of an electron depends on both $n$ and $l$. It is found that electrons with lower angular momentum (i.e. smaller $l$) are lower in energy. This leads to the familiar ordering of atomic orbitals through the periodic table:

$$1s; 2s, 2p; 3s, 3p, 3d; 4s, \ldots$$

(3.21)

The ordering can be understood qualitatively by assuming that the electrons shield each other from the nucleus, thus reducing the energetically favorable Coulomb attraction. Wavefunctions with smaller $l$ penetrate closer to the nucleus, and therefore have less shielding than those with higher $l$ values. As a consequence they have lower energy.

In general, electrons fill the atomic orbitals in order, starting with those of lowest energy. So the 1s orbital is filled first, followed by the 2s, then the three 2p orbitals, etc. Later we will discuss more detailed rules for arranging the electrons so that they have the minimum energy within a particular set of $n$ and $l$ values.
3.4.1 Pauli exclusion principle

The formal statement of the Pauli exclusion principle is that the total electron wavefunction is antisymmetric with respect to the interchange of any two electrons. While this is a good conversation opener at parties, we will be interested in one consequence of the principle: that no two electrons can have the same values for all five of their quantum numbers. As a result, a maximum of two electrons may occupy each atomic orbital, and two electrons in the same atomic orbital (with the same values of $n$, $l$, $m_l$, and $s$) must always have opposite spin orientation, so that their $m_s$ values are different.

3.5 Spin–orbit coupling

As we saw in the examples of Chapter 2, an electron with orbital angular momentum behaves like a circulating electric current, and so has a magnetic moment with an associated magnetic field. In addition, an electron possesses a magnetic moment as a result of its spin. The magnetic moment from the electron’s spin interacts with the magnetic field from its orbital motion. The resulting interaction is called the spin–orbit coupling.

The magnitude of the spin–orbit coupling is determined by the charge on the atomic nucleus, which in turn depends on the atomic number, $Z$. This can be understood by pretending that the electron is fixed in space, with the nucleus orbiting around it, rather than the other way around. The current generated by the circulating nucleus is stronger for a larger nuclear charge. In fact the spin–orbit interaction is proportional to $Z^4$ [6]. As a result the spin–orbit interaction is almost negligible in the hydrogen atom, but increases rapidly with atomic number.

The way in which we calculate the total angular momentum of all the electrons in an atom, given the $l$ and $s$ quantum numbers of the individual electrons, depends on the relative magnitudes of the orbit–orbit, spin–orbit, and spin–spin couplings. In the remainder of this section we will discuss two different schemes for estimating the total angular momentum of a many-electron atom. This is not straightforward, but it is very important, since it’s the total angular momentum of the electrons which determines the magnetic moment of an atom. And that, after all, is what we are interested in!

3.5.1 Russell–Saunders coupling

In light atoms, where the spin–orbit interaction is weak, the coupling between the individual orbital angular momenta and the individual spins is stronger than
3.5 Spin–orbit coupling

The spin–orbit coupling. Therefore the best way to calculate the total angular momentum is to first combine the orbital angular momenta of all the individual electrons (by vector addition) to obtain the total orbital momentum, and to combine their spin angular momenta to obtain the total spin momentum. The total spin and orbital components are then combined to obtain the total angular momentum. The rules for determining the allowed values of the total orbital quantum number, $L$, given the $l$ quantum numbers of the electrons, are rather complicated, so we won’t derive them here. Rather we’ll give an example for an atom with just two electrons, with orbital quantum numbers $l_1$ and $l_2$, respectively. In this case the allowed values of $L$ are given by the so-called Clebsch–Gordan series:

$$L = l_1 + l_2, l_1 + l_2 - 1, \ldots, |l_1 - l_2|.$$  \hfill (3.22)

So if we have two electrons, one with $l = 1$ and the other with $l = 2$, our allowed $L$ values are 3, 2, and 1. By analogy with the $m_l$ values defined for individual electrons, we define a total $M_L$ for atoms that can range from $-L$, $-L + 1$, \ldots, to $+L$, and gives the value of total orbital angular momentum projected onto a specific direction. Similarly the spins are combined into a total spin quantum number

$$S = s_1 + s_2, s_1 - s_2,$$  \hfill (3.23)

and $M_S = -S, -S + 1, \ldots, +S$. The allowed $S$ values for a two-electron atom are 1 or 0, with corresponding $M_S$ values of $-1, 0, +1,$ and 0, respectively.

The vector addition process is illustrated in Fig. 3.5, for the case of two electrons, one with $l = 1$ and the other with $l = 2$.

Figure 3.5 Vector summation of the orbital and spin angular momenta for two electrons with $l = 1, s = \frac{1}{2}$ and $l = 2, s = \frac{1}{2}$, to give the total atomic orbital and spin angular momentum quantum numbers, $L$ and $S$. 

---

2 There is a very clear discussion in the book by Atkins [6].
The total angular momentum quantum number, \( J \), is then determined by vector addition of the total atomic spin and orbital angular momenta:

\[
J = L + S, \ L + S - 1, \ldots, |L - S|.
\] (3.24)

For our two-electron example, the allowed values of \( J \) range from 4 to 0, and the corresponding values of \( M_J \) are \(-4, -3, \ldots, 0, \ldots, 4\). The magnitude of the total atomic angular momentum, \( |J| \), is then equal to \( \sqrt{J(J+1)}\hbar \), and the projection onto the magnetic field direction is \( M_J\hbar \).

This scheme is known as Russell–Saunders coupling [7]. Two important points are worth noting here. First, the energy differences between states having different \( J \) values but the same \( L \) and \( S \) are small compared with those between levels having different \( L \) or \( S \) values.

Second, for a filled shell of electrons, \( L \), \( S \), and \( J \) are equal to zero, so there is no net angular momentum and hence no contribution to the permanent magnetic dipole moment. For atoms with incomplete outer shells of electrons, we only have to consider the incomplete outer shells in calculating \( J \), \( L \), and \( S \). If an atom has no incomplete shells (for example, noble gas atoms), there is no permanent dipole moment. Such atoms are called *diamagnetic*, and we will look at their properties in Chapter 4.

### 3.5.2 Hund’s rules

The German physicist Friedrich Hund came up with a set of three rules for identifying the lowest-energy configuration for the electrons in a partially filled shell [8]. Hund’s rules assume that angular momentum states are well described by Russell–Saunders coupling, so they do not predict the correct arrangement of electrons in the heaviest atoms.

Hund’s first rule states that the electrons maximize their total spin, \( S \). This means that the electrons will occupy orbitals with one electron per orbital and all the spins parallel, until all the orbitals contain one electron each. The electrons are then forced to “pair up” in orbitals, in pairs of opposite spin. This can be understood qualitatively, because electrons with the same spin are required (by the Pauli exclusion principle) to avoid each other. Therefore the repulsive Coulomb energy is less between electrons of the same spin, and the energy is lower.

The second rule states that, for a given spin arrangement, the configuration with the largest total atomic orbital angular momentum, \( L \), lies lowest in energy. The basis for this rule is that if the electrons are orbiting in the same direction (and so have a large total angular momentum) they meet less often than if they orbit in opposite directions. Therefore their repulsion is less on average when \( L \) is large.

Finally, for atoms with less than half-full shells, the lowest-energy electronic configuration is the one with the lowest value of \( J \) (i.e. \( J = |L - S| \)). When the
shell is more than half full the opposite rule holds – the arrangement with the highest $J (= |L + S|)$ has the lowest energy. The origin of the rule is the spin–orbit coupling, and is to do with the fact that oppositely oriented dipole moments have a lower energy than those which are aligned parallel with each other.

As an example, let’s look at the Mn$^{2+}$ ion. This has five 3d electrons, and since there are five 3d orbitals, the electrons are able to occupy each orbital individually with parallel spins, as shown in Fig. 3.6. So $S = \frac{5}{2}$. As a result of maximizing the total spin, we’ve put an electron in each of the d orbitals, with $m_l$ equal to $-2, -1, 0, 1, \text{ and } 2$, respectively. So the sum of the $m_l$ values is zero, and as a result $L$ must be zero. This makes the calculation of $J$ straightforward – if $L = 0$ then $J = S = \frac{5}{2}$.

### 3.5.3 jj coupling

The Russell–Saunders coupling scheme fails in heavy atoms such as the actinides because the spin and orbital angular momenta of individual electrons couple strongly. The orbital and spin angular momenta of each electron, $i$, combine to give the resultant total angular momenta per electron,

$$j_i = l_i + s_i.$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.25)

The resultant $j_i$s then interact weakly, via electrostatic coupling of their electron distributions, to form a resultant total angular momentum,

$$J = \Sigma j_i.$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.26)

In the $jj$ coupling scheme, the total orbital angular momentum quantum number, $L$, and the total spin angular momentum number, $S$, are not specified.

Again, filled shells have no net angular momentum, $J$, and so atoms with entirely filled shells are diamagnetic.

### 3.5.4 The anomalous Zeeman effect

In Section 3.3 we outlined the normal Zeeman effect. In fact only atoms with a total spin angular momentum equal to zero show the normal Zeeman effect. Much more common is the so-called anomalous Zeeman effect, which gives a more complex arrangement of lines in the spectrum, and is a consequence of spin–orbit coupling.
Atomic origins of magnetism

The additional complexity arises because the splittings of the upper and lower levels of the transition are unequal. The ultimate reason for the unequal splittings is the anomalous $g$-factor of the electron.

Because the electron $g$-factor, $g_e$, is 2 rather than 1, the total angular momentum, $J$, and the total magnetic moment, $m$, of the atom are not collinear. So the magnitude of the total atomic magnetic moment along the field axis (which determines the energy change in the presence of a magnetic field) is a function of $S$, $L$, and $J$, rather than just of $J$. In fact, if we work through the mathematics [6], we obtain

$$m = -g\mu_B M_J.$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.27)

Here

$$g = 1 + \frac{J(J + 1) + S(S + 1) - L(L + 1)}{2J(J + 1)}$$  \hspace{1cm} (3.28)

is called the Landé $g$-factor, and $M_J = J, J - 1, \ldots, -J$ is the quantum number representing the projection of the total angular momentum, $J$, onto the field axis. Again, the corresponding expression for the magnitude of the total magnetic moment is $m = g\mu_B \sqrt{J(J + 1)}$.

When $S = 0$, then $g = 1$ (because $J = L$) and so the magnetic moment is independent of $L$ and the upper and lower levels are split by the same amount. In this case we observe the normal Zeeman effect, as we described in Section 3.2. However, when $S \neq 0$, the value of $g$ depends on both $L$ and $S$, and so the upper and lower levels in the spectroscopic transition are split by different amounts. This is illustrated in Fig. 3.7. Note that the allowed transitions are further restricted by the angular momentum conservation selection rules, $\Delta M_J = 0$ (corresponding to

Figure 3.7  Example of a transition in the anomalous Zeeman effect.
emission of linearly polarized light) or $\Delta M_J = \pm 1$ (corresponding to circularly polarized light).

If the applied field is very strong, the coupling between $S$ and $L$ can be broken in favor of their direct coupling to the magnetic field. $S$ and $L$ then precess independently about the field direction. The electromagnetic field which induces the electronic transition couples only to the orbital distribution of the electrons, and so the presence of the spin does not show up in the transitions. Therefore the spectrum switches back from the anomalous to the normal Zeeman effect. This change in the spectrum is known as the Paschen–Back effect [9].

**Homework**

**Exercises**

3.1 Calculate the allowed values of the magnetic moment along the field axis of an atom which has $J = 1$ and $g = 2$.

3.2 In this problem we will calculate the electronic structure and magnetic properties of an important transition-metal ion: Fe$^{2+}$.

(a) What is the electronic configuration of an Fe$^{2+}$ ion? (Note that the transition metals give up their 4s electrons before their 3d electrons on ionization.)

(b) Use Hund’s rules to determine the values of $S$, $L$, and $J$ in the ground state of an Fe$^{2+}$ ion.

(c) Calculate the Landé $g$-factor using Eq. (3.28).

(d) Calculate the total magnetic moment of an Fe$^{2+}$ ion, $g\sqrt{J(J+1)}\mu_B$, and the magnetic moment along the field direction, $gM_J\mu_B$. Compare your result with your answer to Exercise 1.3(b).

(e) Try calculating the total magnetic moment using the value of $S$ determined in 3.2(b), but assuming that $L = 0$ (so $J = S$). In fact the measured value is $5.4\mu_B$. More about this later!

**Further reading**


www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالتورژی
Diamagnetism

A sensitive compass having a Bi needle would be ideal for the young man going west or east, for it always aligns itself at right angles to the magnetic field.


In the previous chapter we studied two contributions to the magnetic moment of atoms – the electron spin and orbital angular momenta. Next we are going to investigate the third (and final) contribution to the magnetic moment of a free atom. This is the change in orbital motion of the electrons when an external magnetic field is applied.

The change in orbital motion due to an applied field is known as the diamagnetic effect, and it occurs in all atoms, even those in which all the electron shells are filled. In fact diamagnetism is such a weak phenomenon that only those atoms which have no net magnetic moment as a result of their shells being filled are classified as diamagnetic. In other materials the diamagnetism is overshadowed by much stronger interactions such as ferromagnetism or paramagnetism.

4.1 Observing the diamagnetic effect

The diamagnetic effect can be observed by suspending a container of diamagnetic material, such as bismuth, in a magnetic field gradient, as shown in Fig. 4.1. Since diamagnetic materials exclude magnetic flux, their energy is increased by the presence of a field, and so the cylinder swings away from the high-field region, towards the region of lower field (the north pole in the figure). Although bismuth is one of the strongest diamagnetic materials, the deflection is quite small because the diamagnetic effect is always weak.

Although the diamagnetic effect might seem counter-intuitive, it actually makes perfect sense! When the magnetic field is turned on, extra currents are generated in the atom by electromagnetic induction. Lenz’s law tells us that the currents are
induced in the direction which opposes the applied field, so the induced magnetic moments are directed opposite to the applied field. So, the stronger the field, the more “negative” the magnetization. And, even if the magnetic moments of the free atom cancel out, the changes in magnetic moment always act to oppose the field, which explains why atoms with no net magnetic moment still show a diamagnetic effect.

4.2 Diamagnetic susceptibility

In Chapter 2 we introduced the concept of susceptibility – the variation in magnetization of a material with applied magnetic field. We stated that the susceptibility of a diamagnetic material is negative, that is, the magnetization decreases as the magnetic field is increased.

Next let’s compute an expression for the value of the diamagnetic susceptibility, \( \chi \), in a free atom. We’ll use a classical derivation (in fact the quantum mechanical derivation gives the same result) known as the Langevin theory \([10]\), which explains the negative susceptibility in terms of the motion of electrons, as we discussed above.\(^1\) The derivation is most elegant in SI units; we’ll give the equivalent expression in cgs units at the end of this section.

Consider an electron orbiting perpendicular to an applied field, and generating a current in the opposite direction to its motion as shown below. When the magnetic

---

\(^1\) In fact it is encouraging to us mere mortals that Langevin made an error in his mathematics which was later corrected by Pauli \([11]\).
field is turned on slowly from zero, the change in flux, $\Phi$, through the current loop induces an electromotive force, $\varepsilon$, which acts to oppose the change in flux. The electromotive force is defined as the line integral of the electric field, $E$, around any closed path, and Faraday’s law tells us that it is equal to the rate of change of magnetic flux through the path. If we take the electron orbit of radius $r$ as our path, then

$$\varepsilon = E \times 2\pi r = -\frac{d\Phi}{dt}. \quad (4.1)$$

In fact the change in flux is achieved by decreasing the electron velocity (and as a consequence decreasing the circulating current, $I$). As a side effect it also decreases the magnetic moment of the loop, and it’s this decrease in the magnetic moment that we observe as the diamagnetic effect. Although the electromotive force only acts while the field is changing, the new value of the current persists because there is no resistance to the motion of the electron. So the magnetic moment is decreased as long as the field is acting.

The torque exerted on the electron by the induced electric field is $-eEr$, and this has to equal the rate of change of angular momentum, $dL/dt$. So

$$\frac{dL}{dt} = -eEr = -\frac{e}{2\pi} \frac{d\Phi}{dt} = \frac{er^2\mu_0}{2} \frac{dH}{dt} \quad (4.2)$$

(because in general $\Phi = \mu HA$, where $A = \pi r^2$ is the area of the current loop, and here we take the permeability $\mu = \mu_0$ because we are considering a free atom).

Integrating with respect to time from zero field, we find the change in angular momentum from turning on the field is

$$\Delta L = \frac{er^2\mu_0}{2} H. \quad (4.3)$$

This additional angular momentum makes an extra magnetic moment, which is just $-e/2m_e$ multiplied by the angular momentum. (Remember $L = m_eva$ and $I = ev/2\pi a$, so $m = IA = -(e/2m_e)L$.) So the change in magnetic moment

$$\Delta m = -\frac{e}{2m_e} \Delta L \quad \Rightarrow \quad \Delta m = -\frac{e^2r^2\mu_0}{4m_e} H. \quad (4.5)$$

We see that the induced magnetic moment is proportional to the applied magnetic field, and in the opposite direction to it.
In this derivation we have assumed that the field $H$ is perpendicular to the electron orbit. In fact in the classical description all orientations are allowed, and instead of using the orbital radius $r^2$, we should use the average value of the square of the projection of $r$ onto the field direction. This reduces the effective magnetic moment by a factor of $\frac{2}{3}$. In addition, if electrons from different atomic orbitals contribute to the diamagnetism, then we need to take the average value of all occupied orbital radii, $\langle r^2 \rangle_{av}$, and multiply by the number of electrons, $Z$. So

$$\Delta m = -\frac{Ze^2}{6m_e} \langle r^2 \rangle_{av} \mu_0 H. \quad (4.6)$$

Finally, to convert to a bulk magnetization we multiply by the number of atoms per unit volume, $N$. (Note that $N$ is equal to $N_A \rho / A$, where $N_A$ is Avogadro’s number (the number of atoms per mole), $\rho$ is the density, and $A$ is the atomic weight.) Then the diamagnetic susceptibility is given by

$$\chi = \frac{M}{H} = -\frac{N \mu_0 Ze^2}{6m_e} \langle r^2 \rangle_{av}. \quad (4.7)$$

Note that this is dimensionless. We see that the diamagnetic susceptibility is always negative, and that there is no explicit temperature dependence. However the amount of magnetization is proportional to $\langle r^2 \rangle_{av}$, which is weakly temperature-dependent. The magnitude of the diamagnetic susceptibility is around $10^{-6}$ per unit volume, which is very small. If we had worked in cgs units we would have ended up with almost the same expression:

$$\chi = -\frac{N Ze^2}{6m_e c^2} \langle r^2 \rangle_{av}, \quad (4.8)$$

in units of emu/(cm³ Oe).

### 4.3 Diamagnetic substances

Remember that, although all materials exhibit a diamagnetic response, only those that have no other magnetic behavior are classified as diamagnetic; this occurs when all atomic or molecular orbitals are either completely filled or empty. All of the noble gases are diamagnetic, because they have filled shells of atomic orbitals. Also many diatomic gases are diamagnetic, because the electrons pair up in the molecular orbitals to leave no net magnetic moment. This is illustrated in Fig. 4.2
Diamagnetism

Figure 4.2 Formation of H$_2$ molecular orbitals from hydrogen atomic orbitals. Each hydrogen atom 1s orbital contains one electron. In the H$_2$ molecule, two electrons fill the lowest molecular orbital, leaving no net angular momentum.

for the hydrogen (H$_2$) molecule. (We will discuss paramagnetic diatomic gases, such as O$_2$, in Chapter 5.)

4.4 Uses of diamagnetic materials

Diamagnetic materials do not have a permanent magnetic moment and therefore do not find the wide range of applications that other magnetic materials do. However, one rather interesting use arises for alloys of diamagnetic and paramagnetic materials. Paramagnetic materials have a positive susceptibility; therefore alloys containing a mixture of diamagnetic and paramagnetic materials always have a particular composition (at each temperature) at which the magnetism exactly cancels out and the susceptibility is zero. At this composition, the alloy is completely unaffected by magnetic fields, and therefore it is used in equipment which is designed to make delicate magnetic measurements.

A novel application of diamagnetism which has been explored recently is the magnetic-field-induced alignment of liquid crystals [12, 13]. A strong magnetic field induces alignment of liquid crystals in which the diamagnetic susceptibility is anisotropic. Since diamagnetic materials tend to exclude magnetic flux, the liquid crystals orient themselves such that the axis with the most negative diamagnetic susceptibility is perpendicular to the field. The amount of macroscopic alignment can then be controlled by adjusting the composition of the liquid crystal to change its diamagnetic susceptibility [12]. This effect can in turn be exploited to align mesoporous inorganic materials such as silica by filling the anisotropic pores with liquid crystal surfactants [13].

4.5 Superconductivity

The best-known materials that show diamagnetic behavior are the superconductors. These are materials which undergo a transition from a state of normal electrical resistivity to one of zero resistivity when cooled below a critical temperature, $T_c$. Below $T_c$, superconductors are in fact “perfect” diamagnets, with a susceptibility
4.5 Superconductivity

Figure 4.3 Schematic of the Meissner effect. The top diagram shows the lines of flux penetrating the material in its normal state. In the lower diagram the material has been cooled below its superconducting transition temperature, and the magnetic field has been simultaneously excluded.

of $-1$. They are fundamentally different from conventional diamagnets, however, in that the susceptibility is caused by macroscopic currents circulating in the material to oppose the applied field, rather than by changes in the orbital motion of closely bound electrons.

The science of superconductivity is extremely rich, and the details are beyond the scope of this book. However, in the remainder of this chapter we will give a brief overview of some of the fundamentals.

4.5.1 The Meissner effect

If a metal such as lead, which is normally diamagnetic, is cooled in a magnetic field, then at some critical temperature, $T_c$, it will spontaneously exclude all magnetic flux from its interior, as illustrated in Fig. 4.3. If $B = \mu_0(H + M) = 0$, then $M = -H$, and $\chi = M/H = -1$ (in SI units). And the permeability $\mu = 1 + \chi = 0$, so the material is impermeable to the magnetic field. $T_c$ is also the temperature at which the material undergoes the transition to the superconducting state.

The exclusion of flux is called the Meissner effect [14], and is the reason that superconductors are perfect diamagnets. The circulating currents which (by Lenz’s law) oppose the applied magnetic field are able to exactly cancel the applied field because the resistivity is zero in the superconducting state. This is the reason that the exclusion of flux coincides with the onset of superconductivity.
4.5.2 Critical field

Even below $T_c$, the superconducting state can be destroyed if a high enough field is applied. The field which destroys the superconducting state at a particular temperature is called the critical field, $H_c$. At lower temperatures, the critical field is higher, and by definition it is zero at $T_c$ because the superconducting state is destroyed spontaneously.

If the superconductor is carrying a current, then the field produced by the circulating charge also contributes to $H_c$. Therefore there is a maximum allowable current before superconductivity is destroyed. The critical current depends on the radius of the conductor and is a crucial factor in determining the technological utility of a particular superconducting material.

4.5.3 Classification of superconductors

Superconductors can be classified as type I or type II. In type I superconductors, the induced magnetization is proportional to the applied field, and a plot of $M$ versus $H$ has a slope of $-1$ all the way up to the critical field, $H_c$. They are always perfect diamagnets in their superconducting state. Usually type I superconductors are pure materials which tend to have low critical fields, and are therefore not useful for many applications.

Type II superconductors undergo a transition from type I superconductivity to a vortex state, in which the superconductor is threaded by flux lines, at a critical field, $H_{c1}$. Between the lower critical field, $H_{c1}$, and a second, higher critical field, $H_{c2}$, the vortex state persists. At $H_{c2}$ the superconducting state is destroyed and normal conductivity resumed. The advantage of type II superconductors is that $H_{c2}$ is high enough to allow practical applications.

Schematic magnetization curves for type I and II superconductors are plotted in Fig. 4.4.

4.5.4 Superconducting materials

Superconductivity was first observed in 1911 in mercury, which showed an abrupt drop in electrical resistance from normal metallic values to effectively zero at 4.2 K [15]. The experiment was performed in the low-temperature laboratory at Leiden by Kammerlingh-Onnes, who coined the term “superconductive state;” mercury was chosen because its low boiling point meant that distillation could be used to obtain highly pure samples. Subsequently, many other elements which are normal metals at normal temperatures were shown to be superconducting at low temperature, with Nb having the highest transition temperature, 9 K.
The explanation of the behavior took more than 40 years: In 1957, Bardeen, Cooper, and Schrieffer formalized what is now known as “BCS theory” [16]. They explained the zero resistance state in terms of the formation of so-called Cooper pairs of electrons, in which the electron–electron coupling is mediated by quantized lattice vibrations, or phonons. These Cooper pairs then combine to form a macroscopic coherent wavefunction which propagates with zero resistance. The BCS theory stimulated research, since it provided guidelines on where to search for superconductors with stronger interactions and therefore higher transition temperatures. As a consequence, Curie temperatures continued to creep upwards, with metallic Nb-based compounds holding the records, close to 20 K.

The phonon-mediated pairing described by the BCS theory also motivated the now famous search of Bednorz and Müller for superconductivity in transition-metal oxides [17]. Their logic was based on the fact that partially filled shells of transition-metal 3d electrons are associated with distortions of the crystal lattice – so-called Jahn–Teller distortions – which could mediate Cooper-pair formation just like phonons in conventional metals. Their idea led them to discover superconductivity in layered copper-oxide materials, with Curie temperatures drastically higher than those observed in conventional superconductors. The cuprates are now known as “high-$T_c$ superconductors,” and critical temperatures up to around 130 K have been achieved at ambient pressure. The fact that superconducting behavior can now be achieved at liquid nitrogen temperatures, rather than requiring cryogenic temperatures, provides a huge simplification both in scientific studies and in realizing technologies. The mechanism for superconductivity in these high-$T_c$ materials is now believed not to be BCS-like, but a detailed theory remains to be developed.
Research excitement in the field of superconductivity continues, with the important questions being the basic physics of the mechanism underlying the superconductivity in the high-\(T_c\) cuprates, as well as the quest for the “holy grail” of a material that is superconducting at room temperature. Flurries of excitement have accompanied the recent discovery of superconductivity at reasonably high temperatures in two unanticipated material classes. In 2000, MgB\(_2\) was found to be superconducting with a \(T_c\) of 39 K \[18\]. MgB\(_2\) is currently believed to be a normal BCS-type superconductor, although its \(T_c\) is higher than thought possible within this mechanism. And the recent announcement of \(T_cs\) up to around 50 K in the layered transition-metal oxy-pnictides \[19\] (of which LaOFeAs is the parent compound) has spawned much activity.

4.5.5 Applications for superconductors

**SQUIDs**

Superconducting quantum interference devices (or SQUIDs) are devices which are capable of measuring very small changes in magnetic field. They make use of the Josephson effect \[20\], in which two pieces of superconducting material are separated by a very thin insulating layer. Superconducting electrons can tunnel through the barrier, but the critical current density is changed by the presence of a very small field. The SQUID uses this change in current to detect the small magnetic field.

**Superconducting magnets**

Materials with high critical fields, such as niobium–tin, Nb\(_3\)Sn, can sustain high current densities, and therefore generate high magnetic fields when wound into a superconducting solenoid. These superconducting magnets are used in research laboratories, and also have practical applications such as magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

**Homework**

**Exercises**

4.1 The value of \(\sqrt{\langle r^2 \rangle_{av}}\) for carbon is known from X-ray diffraction measurements to be around 0.7 Å. The density is 2220 kg/m\(^3\). Calculate the value of susceptibility (give your answer in SI and cgs units). The measured value is \(-13.82 \times 10^{-6}\) per unit volume. The agreement for carbon is better than that for most diamagnets. Comment on possible sources of error in the derivation.
Further reading


5

Paramagnetism

A grocer is attracted to his business by a magnetic force as great as the repulsion which renders it odious to artists.

Honoré De Balzac, Les Célibataires, 1841

In the previous chapter we discussed the diamagnetic effect, which is observed in all materials, even those in which the constituent atoms or molecules have no permanent magnetic moment. Next we are going to discuss the phenomenon of paramagnetism, which occurs in materials that have net magnetic moments. In paramagnetic materials these magnetic moments are only weakly coupled to each other, and so thermal energy causes random alignment of the magnetic moments, as shown in Fig. 5.1(a). When a magnetic field is applied, the moments start to align, but only a small fraction of them are deflected into the field direction for all practical field strengths. This is illustrated in Fig. 5.1(b).

Many salts of transition elements are paramagnetic. In transition-metal salts, each transition-metal cation has a magnetic moment resulting from its partially filled d shell, and the anions ensure spatial separation between cations. Therefore the interactions between the magnetic moments on neighboring cations are weak. The rare-earth salts also tend to be paramagnetic. In this case the magnetic moment is caused by highly localized f electrons, which do not overlap with f electrons on adjacent ions. There are also some paramagnetic metals, such as aluminum, and some paramagnetic gases, such as oxygen, O₂. All ferromagnetic materials (which we will discuss in the next chapter) become paramagnetic above their Curie temperature, when the thermal energy is high enough to overcome the cooperative ordering of the magnetic moments.

At low fields, the flux density within a paramagnetic material is directly proportional to the applied field, so the susceptibility, $\chi = \frac{M}{H}$, is approximately constant. Generally $\chi$ is between around $10^{-3}$ and $10^{-5}$. Because the susceptibility is only slightly greater than zero, the permeability is slightly greater than 1 (unlike
5.1 Langevin theory of paramagnetism

The Langevin theory explains the temperature dependence of the susceptibility in paramagnetic materials by assuming that the non-interacting magnetic moments on atomic sites are randomly oriented as a result of their thermal energy. When an external magnetic field is applied, the orientation of the atomic moments shifts slightly towards the field direction, as shown schematically in Fig. 5.1. We will derive the expression for the susceptibility using a classical argument, then extend it to the quantum mechanical case at the end of the derivation.

Remember that the energy of a magnetic moment in an applied field $H$ is $E = -m \cdot H = -mH \cos \theta$. So we can use Boltzmann statistics to write down the probability that a magnetic moment will be at an angle $\theta$ to the applied field:

$$e^{-E/k_B T} = e^{m \cdot H/k_B T} = e^{mH \cos \theta / k_B T}.$$  (5.1)

(Here the un-bold $m$ and $H$ represent the magnitude of the magnetic moment and field vectors, respectively, and $k_B$ is Boltzmann’s constant.) We can calculate the
number of moments lying between angles $\theta$ and $\theta + d\theta$ with respect to the field, $H$, by noticing that it is proportional to the fractional surface area of a surrounding sphere, as shown in Fig. 5.2. This fractional surface area $dA = 2\pi r^2 \sin \theta d\theta$.

So the overall probability, $p(\theta)$, of an atomic moment making an angle between $\theta$ and $\theta + d\theta$ is

$$p(\theta) = \frac{e^{mH \cos \theta / k_B T} \sin \theta d\theta}{\int_0^{\pi} e^{mH \cos \theta / k_B T} \sin \theta d\theta}.$$ (5.2)

where the denominator is the total number of atomic magnetic moments, and the factors of $2\pi r^2$ cancel out.

Each moment contributes an amount $m \cos \theta$ to the magnetization parallel to the magnetic field, and so the magnetization from the whole system is

$$M = Nm \langle \cos \theta \rangle$$ (5.3)

$$= Nm \int_0^{\pi} \cos \theta p(\theta) d\theta$$ (5.4)

$$= Nm \int_0^{\pi} e^{mH \cos \theta / k_B T} \cos \theta \sin \theta d\theta$$ (5.5)

along the direction of the applied field.

Carrying out the nasty integrals (or looking them up in tables!) gives

$$M = Nm \left[ \coth \left( \frac{mH}{k_B T} \right) - \frac{k_B T}{mH} \right]$$ (5.7)

$$= NmL(\alpha),$$ (5.8)
5.1 Langevin theory of paramagnetism

where \( \alpha = mH/k_B T \), and \( L(\alpha) = \coth(\alpha) - 1/\alpha \) is called the Langevin function. The form of \( L(\alpha) \) is shown in Fig. 5.3. If \( \alpha \) were made large enough, for example by applying a very large field or by lowering the temperature towards 0 K, then \( M \) would approach \( Nm \), and complete alignment of the magnetic spins could be achieved.

Now what about our earlier statement that \( \chi \propto 1/T \)? We were expecting to see \( M = \text{some constant } \times H/T \), and we’ve ended up with something far more complicated. Well, the Langevin function can be expanded as a Taylor series:

\[
L(\alpha) = \frac{\alpha^3}{3} - \frac{\alpha^3}{45} + \cdots \tag{5.9}
\]

So, keeping only the first term (which dominates at all practical fields and temperatures since \( \alpha \) is very small),

\[
M = \frac{Nm\alpha}{3} = \frac{Nm^2 H}{3k_B T} \tag{5.10}
\]

(The equivalent expression in SI units is \( M = \frac{(N\mu_0m^2/3k_B)(H/T)}{\text{since } E = -\mu_0m \cdot H} \). The magnetization is proportional to the applied field and inversely
Paramagnetism

proportional to the temperature, as we expected. This gives the susceptibility,

\[ \chi = \frac{M}{H} = \frac{Nm^2}{3k_B T} = \frac{C}{T}, \tag{5.11} \]

where \( C = Nm^2/3k_B \) is a constant. This is Curie’s law: the susceptibility of a paramagnet is inversely proportional to the temperature.

So far we have assumed that the magnetic dipole moment can take all possible orientations with respect to the applied magnetic field, whereas in reality it can have only discrete orientations because of spatial quantization. If we incorporate the quantization into the derivation of the total magnetization, we obtain

\[ M = NgJ\mu_B \left[ \frac{2J+1}{2J} \coth \left( \frac{2J+1}{2J} \alpha \right) - \frac{1}{2J} \coth \left( \frac{\alpha}{2J} \right) \right] \tag{5.12} \]

\[ = NgJ\mu_B B_J(\alpha). \tag{5.13} \]

\( B_J(\alpha) \) is the Brillouin function, which is equal to the Langevin function in the limit that \( J \to \infty \). The Brillouin function can also be expanded in a Taylor series:

\[ B_J(\alpha) = \frac{J+1}{3J} \alpha - \frac{[(J+1)^2 + J^2](J+1)}{90J^3} \alpha^3 + \cdots. \tag{5.14} \]

Here \( \alpha = Jg\mu_B H/k_B T \).

Keeping only the first term in the expansion, the quantum mechanical expression for the susceptibility becomes

\[ \chi = \frac{Ng^2J(J+1)\mu_B^2}{3k_B T} = \frac{C}{T}. \tag{5.15} \]

Again, to obtain the susceptibility in SI units, this expression is multiplied by \( \mu_0 \).

The overall form of the response is the same as in the classical case, but this time the proportionality constant, \( C \), is given by \( Ng^2J(J+1)\mu_B^2/3k_B = Nm_{\text{eff}}^2/3k_B \), where \( m_{\text{eff}} = g\sqrt{J(J+1)}\mu_B \).

\subsection*{5.2 The Curie–Weiss law}

In fact many paramagnetic materials do not obey the Curie law which we just derived, but instead follow a more general temperature dependence given by the Curie–Weiss law:

\[ \chi = \frac{C}{T - \theta}. \tag{5.16} \]

Paramagnets which follow the Curie–Weiss law undergo spontaneous ordering and become ferromagnetic below some critical temperature, the Curie temperature, \( T_C \) (which we’ll see later is, for all practical purposes, equal to \( \theta \)).
In our derivation of the Curie law we assumed that the localized atomic magnetic moments do not interact with each other at all – they are just reoriented by the applied magnetic field. Weiss explained the observed Curie–Weiss behavior by postulating the existence of an internal interaction between the localized moments, which he called a “molecular field.” He did not speculate as to the origin of his molecular field, beyond suggesting that it is a mutual interaction between the electrons which tends to align the dipole moments parallel to each other. (We can’t really criticize Weiss for this – remember that the electron had been discovered only 10 years earlier, and quantum mechanics hadn’t been “invented” yet!)

Weiss assumed that the intensity $H_W$ of the molecular field is directly proportional to the magnetization:

$$H_W = \gamma M,$$

(5.17)

where $\gamma$ is called the molecular field constant. So the total field acting on the material is

$$H_{\text{tot}} = H + H_W.$$

(5.18)

We just derived

$$\chi = \frac{M}{H} = \frac{C}{T},$$

(5.19)

so, replacing $H$ by $H_{\text{tot}} = H + \gamma M$,

$$\frac{M}{H + \gamma M} = \frac{C}{T},$$

(5.20)

or

$$M = \frac{CH}{T - C\gamma}.$$

(5.21)

Therefore

$$\chi = \frac{M}{H} = \frac{C}{T - \theta},$$

(5.22)

the Curie–Weiss law!

When $T = \theta$ there is a divergence in the susceptibility, which corresponds to the phase transition to the spontaneously ordered phase. A positive value of $\theta$ indicates that the molecular field is acting in the same direction as the applied field, and tending to make the elementary magnetic moments align parallel to one another and to the applied field. This is the case in a ferromagnetic material.

We can estimate the size of the Weiss molecular field. Below the critical temperature, $T_C$, paramagnetic materials exhibit ferromagnetic behavior. Above $T_C$, the thermal energy outweighs $H_W$, and the ferromagnetic ordering is destroyed.
Table 5.1 Calculated and measured effective magnetic moments for the rare-earth ions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ion</th>
<th>Configuration</th>
<th>$g\sqrt{J(J+1)}$</th>
<th>$m/\mu_B$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ce$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^1$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>2.54</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^2$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>3.58</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nd$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^3$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>3.62</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pm$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^4$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>2.68</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sm$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^5$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eu$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^6$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gd$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^7$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>7.94</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tb$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^8$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>9.72</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dy$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^9$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>10.63</td>
<td>10.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ho$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^{10}$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>10.60</td>
<td>10.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Er$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^{11}$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>9.59</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tm$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^{12}$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>7.57</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yb$^{3+}$</td>
<td>4f$^{13}$5s$^2$5p$^6$</td>
<td>4.54</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From [21]. Reprinted by permission of John Wiley & Sons.

Therefore, at $T_C$ the interaction energy, $\mu_B H_W$, must be approximately equal to the thermal energy, $k_B T_C$. So for a material with a Curie temperature of around 1000 K, $H_W \approx k_B T_C / \mu_B \approx 10^{-16} 10^3 / 10^{-20} \approx 10^7$ Oe. This is extremely large!

In the next chapter we will apply Weiss’s molecular field theory below the Curie temperature to understand the ferromagnetic phase, and we will discuss the origin of the molecular field.

The Langevin theory and the Curie–Weiss law give accurate descriptions of many paramagnetic materials. Next, we will look at two cases where they don’t do so well. The first is not really a problem with the theory, but a difference in the size of the measured and predicted magnetic moments of the ions. The second is an example of a class of materials (the Pauli paramagnets) where the assumptions of the Langevin localized-moment theory no longer apply.

### 5.3 Quenching of orbital angular momentum

The total magnetization in a paramagnet depends on the magnitude of the magnetic moments, $m$, of the constituent ions. Once we know the $g$-factor of an ion, and the $J$ value, we can calculate the magnitude of its magnetic moment – it’s just $m = g \mu_B \sqrt{J(J+1)}$. (This, after all, was the whole purpose of Chapter 3!) In general this formula works very well for paramagnetic salts, even though the ions have formed into crystals and are no longer “free.” As an example we show the calculated and experimental values for the rare-earth ions in Table 5.1. In all cases
5.4 Pauli paramagnetism

In the Langevin theory we assumed that the electrons in the partially occupied valence shells (which cause the net atomic magnetic moments) were fully localized.
on their respective atoms. We know that, in metals, the electrons are able to wander through the lattice and give rise to electrical conductivity. So the localized-moment approximation is unlikely to be a good one. This is in fact the case, and in paramagnetic metals we do not see the $1/T$ susceptibility dependence characteristic of Langevin paramagnets. Instead the susceptibility is more or less independent of temperature – a phenomenon known as Pauli paramagnetism. Before we can explain Pauli paramagnetism, we need to understand the concept of energy bands in solids.

### 5.4.1 Energy bands in solids

We saw in Chapter 3 that the electrons in atoms occupy discrete energy levels known as atomic orbitals. When atoms are brought together to form a solid, the wavefunctions of their outermost valence electrons overlap and the electronic configuration is altered. In fact, each discrete orbital energy of the free atom contributes to a continuous band of allowed energy levels in the solid. The greater the amount of overlap between the wavefunctions, the broader the band. So the valence electrons occupy rather broad bands, whereas the bands produced from the more tightly bound core electrons are narrow.

The band formation process is illustrated for sodium in Fig. 5.4. The atomic orbital energy levels, corresponding to infinitely separated Na atoms, are shown...
on the left of the figure. A free Na atom has fully occupied 1s, 2s, and 2p sub-shells, and a single electron in the 3s orbital. The 3p orbital is empty in the ground state. When the atoms are brought together the wavefunctions of the valence electrons start to overlap and band formation occurs. At the equilibrium bonding distance, the lower-lying core electrons have very little wavefunction overlap, and correspondingly narrow bands. In contrast, the bands derived from the 3s and 3p atomic orbitals are so wide that they overlap.

Just as in free atoms, the electrons in solids occupy the energy bands starting with those of the lowest energy and working up. The bands which derived from filled atomic orbitals are filled completely. In sodium, the electrons which occupied the 3s orbital in the atom now occupy the overlapping 3s–3p bands – a fraction are in 3s states and the remainder are in 3p states. (We’ll see in the next chapter that this overlapping of energy bands has an important effect in determining the average atomic magnetic moments in ferromagnetic transition metals.)

*Energy bands in a magnetic field.* The highest energy level which is filled with electrons at 0 K is called the Fermi energy, $E_F$. One characteristic of paramagnetic metals is that the energy states for up- and down-spin electrons are the same, and so the energy levels at the Fermi energy are identical for up- and down-spins. (We’ll see later that this is not the case in ferromagnetic metals, where there are more electrons of one spin, giving rise to a net magnetic moment.) This is illustrated schematically in Fig. 5.5(a). (Remember that the energy levels really form a continuous band; we have drawn discrete levels for clarity.) When a magnetic field is applied, however, those electrons with their magnetic moments aligned parallel to the field have a lower energy than those which are antiparallel.
(If the field is applied in the up direction, then the down-spin electrons have lower energy than the up-spin electrons, since the negative electronic charge makes the magnetic moment point in the opposite direction to the spin.) We often illustrate this energy change by shifting the band containing the electrons with moments parallel to the field down in energy by an amount $\mu_B H$, and that for the electrons with antiparallel moments up by the same amount (Fig. 5.5(b)). As a result, there is a tendency for the antiparallel electrons to try and reorient themselves parallel to the field. However, because of the Pauli exclusion principle, the only way that they can do this is by moving into one of the vacant parallel-moment states, and only those electrons close to the Fermi level have sufficient energy to do this. For the lower-lying electrons, the energy gained by realignment would be outweighed by that required to promote the electron to the vacant state. The resulting arrangement of electrons is shown in Fig. 5.5(b), where we see that Pauli paramagnets develop an overall magnetization when a magnetic field is applied.

Before we can quantify this change in induced magnetization, and derive an expression for the susceptibility, we need to have a model for the electrons in a metal. In the next section we’ll derive the so-called “free-electron theory,” which describes the properties of many simple metals well.

### 5.4.2 Free-electron theory of metals

The free-electron theory assumes that the valence electrons in a solid are completely ionized from their parent atoms, and behave like a “sea” of electrons wandering around in the solid. These electrons, the free-electron gas, move in the average field created by all the other electrons and the ion cores, and, for each electron, the repulsive potential from the other electrons is assumed to exactly cancel out the attractive ion-core potentials. Despite this huge approximation, the free-electron theory yields surprisingly good results for simple metals. (The reasons for the success of the free-electron model are rather subtle, and confused condensed-matter physicists for a long time. Unfortunately we don’t have time to go into them here. There is an excellent discussion in the review by Cohen [22].)

The Schrödinger equation for free electrons includes only a kinetic energy term, because by definition the potential energy is zero. So, in three dimensions it is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_e} \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} \right) \psi_k(r) = E_k \psi_k(r). \quad (5.23)$$

The most straightforward method for solving this equation is to pretend that the electrons are confined to a cube of edge length $L$, and that they satisfy periodic
5.4 Pauli paramagnetism

Figure 5.6 Energy versus wavevector for a free-electron gas.

boundary conditions. Then the solutions are traveling plane waves,

$$\psi_k(r) = e^{ik \cdot r},$$  \hspace{1cm} (5.24)

provided that the wavevector $k$ satisfies

$$k_x, k_y, k_z = \pm \frac{2n\pi}{L},$$  \hspace{1cm} (5.25)

where $n$ is any positive integer. In a macroscopic solid, $L$ is very large and so the spectrum of allowed $k$ values is effectively continuous.

Substituting $\psi_k(r)$ back into the Schrödinger equation gives us the energy eigenvalues,

$$E_k = \frac{\hbar^2}{2me} \left(k_x^2 + k_y^2 + k_z^2\right).$$  \hspace{1cm} (5.26)

The energy is quadratic in the wavevector, as shown in Fig. 5.6.

Now as we saw in Section 5.4.1, the important quantity for determining the response of a Pauli paramagnet to a magnetic field is the number of electrons close to the Fermi energy level which are able to reverse their spin when a field is applied. So next let’s derive an expression for the density of states – that is, the number of electron energy levels per unit energy range – at the Fermi level.

We just showed that the energy of a particular $k$-state is given by $E = (\hbar^2/2me)k^2$. In particular the Fermi energy is given by $E = (\hbar^2/2me)k_F^2$, where $k_F$ is the so-called Fermi wavevector, that is, the wavevector of the highest filled state. We can think of the Fermi wavevector as delineating a sphere of volume $\frac{4}{3}\pi k_F^3$ in $k$-space, within which all states are filled with electrons. We also know that the components of the $k$-vector, $k_x$, $k_y$, and $k_z$, are quantized in multiples of $2\pi / L$. So the volume occupied by a single quantum state in $k$-space must be $(2\pi / L)^3$. Therefore the total number of electrons, which is equal to twice the number of
occupied orbitals (one electron each of up- and down-spin), is given by

\[
N = \frac{\text{volume of Fermi sphere}}{\text{volume per } k\text{-state}} \times 2
\]  
(5.27)

\[
= \left(\frac{4\pi k_F^3}{(2\pi)^3}\right) \times 2
\]  
(5.28)

\[
= \frac{V}{3\pi^2 k_F^3}
\]  
(5.29)

\[
= \frac{V}{3\pi^2} \left(\frac{2m_eE_F}{\hbar^2}\right)^{3/2},
\]  
(5.30)

where \( V = L^3 \) is the volume of the crystal. (Similarly, the number of electrons required to fill up the states to a general energy level \( E \) (below \( E_F \)) is \((V/3\pi^2)(2m_eE/\hbar^2)^{3/2}\).) The density of states, \( D(E) \), is defined as the derivative of the number of electron states with respect to energy. Differentiating Eq. (5.30) gives us the density of states at the Fermi level,

\[
D(E_F) = \frac{V}{2\pi^2} \left(\frac{2m_e}{\hbar^2}\right)^{3/2} E_F^{1/2}.
\]  
(5.31)

As the energy increases, the number of electronic states per unit energy range increases by the square root of the energy; we illustrate this in Fig. 5.7(a), adopting the usual convention of plotting the densities of states for up- and down-spins separately along the positive and negative \( x \) axes. We can simplify the expression for \( D(E) \) by recognizing that \((V/3\pi^2)(2m_e/\hbar^2)^{3/2} = N/E_F^{3/2}\). Substituting gives

\[
D(E_F) = \frac{3}{2} \frac{N}{E_F}
\]  
(5.32)

Next let’s use this expression for the density of states of a free-electron gas to derive the susceptibility of our Pauli paramagnet.

### 5.4.3 Susceptibility of Pauli paramagnets

We saw in Chapter 3 that a single free electron, with spin angular momentum only, has a component of magnetic moment of 1 Bohr magneton either along or opposed to the field direction. (Remember, the moment along the field direction, \( m = -g_e\mu_B m_s = \pm \mu_B \) for a free electron.) Also, the application of a magnetic field changes the energy of a magnetic moment by an amount \( \mu_0 m H \cos \theta \) (in SI units), where \( \theta \) is the angle between the orientations of the magnetic moment and the applied field. So an electron whose magnetic moment projection is parallel to the direction of the field (for which \( mH \cos \theta = +\mu_B \)) will be lowered in energy...
by an amount $\mu_0 \mu_B H$, and one whose projection is antiparallel to the field will be increased in energy by $\mu_0 \mu_B H$. Thus a magnetic field changes the density of states in a free-electron gas, as shown in Fig. 5.7(b). Note that Fig. 5.7 is illustrating the same physics as Fig. 5.5, but with a more realistic distribution of the electrons as a function of energy.

If the field is applied in the up direction (so that it is parallel to the down-spin magnetic moment), there is a spill-over of electrons from up-spin to down-spin until the new Fermi levels for up- and down-spin are equal (and in fact very close to the original Fermi level, $E_F$). The zero of energy for the down-spin density of states is at $-\mu_0 \mu_B H$; for the up-spin density of states it is at $+\mu_0 \mu_B H$. Therefore the total number of down-spin electrons is now given by

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{-\mu_0 \mu_B H}^{E_F} D(E + \mu_0 \mu_B H) \, dE$$

and of up-spin electrons by

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{+\mu_0 \mu_B H}^{E_F} D(E - \mu_0 \mu_B H) \, dE.$$ 

(The factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ occurs because only one electron occupies each up- or down-spin state, and the density of states was defined for two electrons per orbital.)
The net magnetic moment, \( m \), is the number of down-spin moments minus the number of up-spin moments, multiplied by the moment per spin, \( \mu_B \):

\[
m = \frac{\mu_B}{2} \left[ \int_{-\mu_0\mu_B H}^{E_F} D(E + \mu_0\mu_B H) \, dE - \int_{+\mu_0\mu_B H}^{E_F} D(E - \mu_0\mu_B H) \, dE \right].
\]

(5.35)

Changing variables gives

\[
m = \frac{\mu_B}{2} \int_{E_F - \mu_0\mu_B H}^{E_F + \mu_0\mu_B H} D(E) \, dE.
\]

(5.36)

The value of the integral is equal to the area of a strip of width \( 2\mu_0\mu_B H \) centered around \( E_F \). This area is \( 2\mu_0\mu_B H D(E_F) \), so the net magnetic moment in the direction of the field is given by

\[
m = \mu_0\mu_B^2 H D(E_F),
\]

(5.37)

where \( D(E_F) \) is the density of states at the Fermi level, which we derived earlier:

\[
D(E_F) = \frac{3}{2} \frac{N}{E_F}.
\]

(5.38)

So the magnetization – the magnetic moment per unit volume – is

\[
M = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{2(N/V)\mu_0\mu_B^2 H}{2E_F},
\]

(5.39)

and the susceptibility is

\[
\chi = \frac{M}{H} = \frac{3(N/V)\mu_0\mu_B^2}{2E_F},
\]

(5.40)

which is independent of temperature! Remember that there is also a diamagnetic contribution to the susceptibility, which it turns out is one-third of the Pauli paramagnetism and of course in the opposite direction. Thus the expression for the total susceptibility of a metal which fits the free-electron model is

\[
\chi = \frac{\mu_0\mu_B^2(N/V)}{E_F}
\]

(5.41)

(in SI units). The values of susceptibility calculated using this formula are in good agreement with measured values for metals such as Na or Al which are well described by the free-electron model.

### 5.5 Paramagnetic oxygen

When two oxygen atoms (each with electronic configuration \( 1s^2, 2s^2, 2p^4 \)) join together to form an \( \text{O}_2 \) molecule, their atomic orbitals combine to form molecular orbitals, as shown in Fig. 5.8. (For an explanation of why the orbitals are ordered as shown, see [6].) The 16 electrons fill up the molecular orbitals from the lowest in energy up, and they occupy orbitals of equal energy individually before pairing.
up, just as they did in the atom. The consequence of this occupation scheme is that there are unpaired electrons in an O$_2$ molecule, and therefore gaseous oxygen has a paramagnetic response to an applied magnetic field.

5.6 Uses of paramagnets

Like the diamagnets, paramagnets do not find wide application because they have no permanent net magnetic moment. They are used, however, in the production of very low temperatures, by a process called adiabatic demagnetization. At a “conventional” low temperature, such as that of liquid helium (a few degrees above absolute zero), the term $\alpha$ in the Langevin function is actually quite large – certainly greater than unity. Therefore if a paramagnet is cooled to liquid-helium temperature in the presence of a strong magnetic field, the magnetization is nearly saturated, so most of the spins are lined up parallel to the field. If the paramagnet is then thermally isolated (for example by removing the liquid helium and leaving a good vacuum) and the field is turned off slowly, then the temperature of the paramagnet drops even further. The reason for the temperature drop is that, when the spins randomize as a result of the field’s being removed, they must do work against whatever field remains. The only energy which is available to them is their thermal energy, and when they use this to demagnetize they lower their temperature. It is possible to reach temperatures as low as a few thousandths of a degree using this technique.

In addition, paramagnets allow us to study the electronic properties of materials which have atomic magnetic moments, without the interference of strong cooperative effects.

In the next chapter we will extend the Langevin theory of paramagnetism to help us start to understand the properties of the most important class of magnetic materials – the ferromagnets – in which the cooperative effects between magnetic moments are indeed strong.
Paramagnetism

Homework

Exercises

5.1 Show that the Brillouin function approaches the Langevin function as $J \to \infty$. What are the limits of the Brillouin function as $J \to \frac{1}{2}$ and $\alpha \to 0$?

5.2 Calculate the room-temperature paramagnetic susceptibility of an ideal gas, in which each atom has $J = 1$ and $g = 2$. (Remember the ideal gas law: $PV = nRT$.) These are in fact the values of $J$ and $g$ for molecular oxygen. Note that your answer is small and positive.

5.3 In this problem we will explore the properties of a model three-dimensional lattice of spins, each with spin $S = \frac{1}{2}$.
   (a) What is the magnetic moment of each spin? What are the allowed values of the projection of the magnetic moment, $m_i$, onto some chosen axis, say $z$?
   (b) What are the possible values of the magnetic energy of each spin?
   (c) Assuming that the spins are non-interacting, calculate the magnetization of the lattice of spins when a magnetic field, $H$, is applied along the $z$ axis. (HINT: Use the result from statistical thermodynamics that the average magnetization of a spin is given by $\langle M \rangle = (1/Z)\Sigma e^{-E_i/k_BT}$, where $m_i$ is the magnetization of a spin along the field direction when it has energy $E_i$, and $Z = \Sigma e^{-E_i/k_BT}$ is called the partition function.)
   (d) For a given value of field, $H$, how does the magnetization, $M$, depend on temperature? Explain the behavior of $M$ for $T \to 0$. Taking the number of spins per unit volume to be $3.7 \times 10^{28} \text{ m}^{-3}$, calculate the numerical value of the saturation magnetization, $M_s$, at $T = 0$. Explain the behavior of $M$ for $T \to \infty$.
   (e) What does the relationship between $M$ and $H$ reduce to for weak fields ($H \to 0$)? What is the expression for the susceptibility, $\chi$, in this case, and how does it depend on temperature? Calculate the numerical value of $\chi$ at room temperature.
   (f) Comment on the results which you have obtained for this spin system. What kind of magnetic behavior (antiferromagnetic, paramagnetic, diamagnetic, etc.) is displayed by this model system? Justify your conclusion. How would we need to modify the model in order to describe ferromagnetic behavior?

To think about

What mechanism might we use to lower the temperature below that obtained by the procedure described in Section 5.6?

Further reading


www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژى
6

Interactions in ferromagnetic materials

Anyone who is not shocked by quantum theory has not understood it.

Niels Bohr (1885–1962)

In Chapter 2 we introduced the concept of ferromagnetism, and looked at the hysteresis loop which characterizes the response of a ferromagnetic material to an applied magnetic field. This response is really quite remarkable! Look at Figs. 2.3 and 2.4 again – we see that it is possible to change the magnetization of a ferromagnetic material from an initial value of zero to a saturation value of around 1000 emu/cm³ by the application of a rather small magnetic field – around tens of oersteds.

The fact that the initial magnetization of a ferromagnet is zero is explained by the domain theory of ferromagnetism. The domain theory was postulated in 1907 by Weiss [23] and has been very successful. We will discuss the details of the domain theory, and the experimental evidence for the existence of domains, in the next chapter.

The subject of this chapter is: How can such a small external field cause such a large magnetization? In Exercise 6.2(b), you’ll see that a field of 50 Oe has almost no effect on a system of weakly interacting elementary magnetic moments. Thermal agitations act to oppose the ordering influence of the applied field, and, when the atomic magnetic moments are independent, the thermal agitation wins. In ferromagnetic materials there is a strong internal interaction between the magnetic moments that causes them to line up and yield a spontaneous magnetization in spite of competing thermal effects; we’ll see later in the chapter that this interaction is quantum mechanical in nature. We’ll need to learn some more quantum mechanics as we go along, but hopefully we can make this as painless as possible.

But first let’s start with the phenomenological model of ferromagnetism, proposed by Weiss in his classic 1907 paper [23]. We won’t worry about the origin of

www.iran-mavad.com
the strong interactions until Section 6.2 – instead we’ll look first at their effect on observables such as susceptibility.

### 6.1 Weiss molecular field theory

In the previous chapter we showed that the Weiss molecular field explained the experimentally observed Curie–Weiss law for the behavior of many paramagnetic materials:

\[ \chi = \frac{C}{T - \theta}. \]  

(6.1)

Above their Curie temperatures, \( T_C \), ferromagnetic materials become paramagnetic, and their susceptibilities follow the Curie–Weiss law, with a value of \( \theta \) approximately equal to \( T_C \). This experimental observation led Weiss to further assume that a molecular field acts in a ferromagnet below its Curie temperature as well as in the paramagnetic phase above \( T_C \), and that this molecular field is strong enough to magnetize the substance even in the absence of an external applied field.

So we can regard a ferromagnetic material as being a paramagnet with a very large internal molecular field. This is a big help to us, because it means that we can use the theories of paramagnetism which we developed in the previous chapter to explain the properties of ferromagnets.

#### 6.1.1 Spontaneous magnetization

First let’s try to understand the spontaneous magnetization of ferromagnets using the Weiss theory. Remember that the classical Langevin theory of paramagnetism tells us that the magnetization is given by

\[ M = NmL(\alpha), \]

(6.2)

where \( \alpha = mH/k_BT \) and \( L(\alpha) \) is the Langevin function. The solid line of Fig. 6.1 is a plot of \( M = NmL(\alpha) \) as a function of \( \alpha \). But the Weiss theory gives us an additional expression for \( M \), namely that \( M = H_W/\gamma \), where \( \gamma \) is the molecular field constant. If we assume that any field \( H \) is provided entirely by the molecular field, then, since \( \alpha = mH/k_BT \) is linear in the field, the magnetization \( M = H_W/\gamma \) must be a linear function of \( \alpha \); this is plotted as the dashed line of Fig. 6.1. Then the only physical solutions are those where the two curves intersect. This occurs at the origin (which is unstable to any small fluctuation in the magnetization) and at the point \( M_{\text{spont}} \), where the material is spontaneously magnetized!
6.1 Weiss molecular field theory

Figure 6.1 Explanation of spontaneous magnetization in ferromagnetic materials.

6.1.2 Effect of temperature on magnetization

We can also investigate the temperature dependence of the spontaneous magnetization using this graphical solution. If we again assume that $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{H}_W$, then

$$\alpha = \frac{mH_W}{k_B T} = \frac{m\gamma M}{k_B T}, \quad (6.3)$$

so

$$M = \left(\frac{k_B T}{m\gamma}\right)\alpha. \quad (6.4)$$

The magnetization is a linear function of $\alpha$, with slope proportional to the temperature. So as the temperature increases, the slope of the dashed line increases, and it intersects the Langevin function at a point corresponding to a smaller spontaneous magnetization, $M_{\text{spont}}$.

Eventually, when the gradient of the dashed line approaches the tangent to the Langevin function at the $\alpha = 0$ limit, the spontaneous magnetization is zero. This is shown by the straight dotted line in Fig. 6.1. The temperature at this point is the Curie temperature, and at any higher temperature the only solution is at the origin, meaning that the spontaneous magnetization vanishes. The magnetization decreases smoothly to become zero at $T = T_C$, indicating (see Fig. 6.2) that the ferromagnetic to paramagnetic transition is a second-order phase transition.

The Curie temperature can be determined by equating, at the origin, the slope of the magnetization described by the Langevin function (which is $\frac{1}{3} \times Nm$), with the slope of the straight line representing magnetization by the molecular field:

$$\frac{k_B T_C}{m\gamma} = \frac{1}{3} \times Nm, \quad (6.5)$$
Interactions in ferromagnetic materials

Figure 6.2 Variation of spontaneous magnetization with temperature in ferromagnetic materials, calculated using classical Langevin theory.

so

\[ T_C = \frac{\gamma N m^2}{3k_B}. \]  

(6.6)

A large molecular field constant leads to a high Curie temperature. This is what we would expect intuitively – magnetic moments which interact strongly with each other should require a larger thermal energy to disrupt their magnetic ordering and induce a phase transition to a paramagnetic phase.

Conversely, if the Curie temperature is known, then the Weiss molecular field can be extracted:

\[ \gamma = \frac{3k_B T_C}{N m^2} \]  

(6.7)

and

\[ H_W = \gamma M = \gamma N m = \frac{3k_B T_C}{m}. \]  

(6.8)

(Note that this is similar to the approximate expression we obtained earlier, simply by equating the magnetic dipole energy with the thermal energy.)

A schematic plot of spontaneous magnetization versus temperature obtained using this graphical technique is given in Fig. 6.2. Such plots reproduce experimental results reasonably well. Greater accuracy can be obtained by replacing the Langevin function with the quantum mechanical Brillouin function, with an appropriate choice of \( J \). Using the quantum mechanical expressions, the molecular field constant is given by

\[ \gamma = \frac{3k_B T_C}{N m_{\text{eff}}^2}. \]  

(6.9)
and the Curie temperature by

\[ T_C = \frac{\gamma N m_{\text{eff}}^2}{3k_B}, \quad (6.10) \]

with \( m_{\text{eff}} = g \sqrt{J(J+1)} \mu_B \). Multiplication by \( \mu_0 \) produces the expression for \( T_C \) in SI units.

Figure 6.3 compares the measured relative spontaneous magnetizations of Fe, Co, and Ni, as a function of temperature, with curves predicted using classical Langevin theory, and using the Brillouin function with \( J = 1 \) and \( J = \frac{1}{2} \). It is clear that the Weiss theory gives good agreement with experiment, particularly the quantum mechanical version with \( J = 1/2 \).

### 6.2 Origin of the Weiss molecular field

In 1928, Heisenberg [25] showed that the existence of a Weiss “molecular field” could be explained using a quantum mechanical treatment of the many-body problem. In the next section we will work through the quantum mechanical calculation for the energy of the helium atom, which has two electrons and therefore provides a simple example of a many-body Hamiltonian. The relevant result which emerges from the quantum mechanics is that there is a term of electrostatic origin in the
Interactions in ferromagnetic materials

![Parallel and antiparallel arrangements of spins in the He first excited state.](image)

The exchange interaction is in fact a consequence of the Pauli exclusion principle. If two electrons in an atom have antiparallel spins, then they are allowed to share the same atomic or molecular orbital. As a result they will overlap spatially, thus increasing the electrostatic Coulomb repulsion. In contrast, if they have parallel spins, then they must occupy different orbitals and so will have less unfavorable Coulomb repulsion. (This is the same argument that we used to explain Hund’s first rule in Chapter 3.) So the orientation of the spins affects the spatial part of the wavefunction, and this in turn determines the electrostatic Coulomb interaction between the electrons.

Let’s make a rough classical estimate of the order of magnitude of the Coulomb repulsion between two electrons. If we assume that the average distance between electrons is around 1 Å, then the Coulomb energy is

\[
U = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 r} \approx \frac{(1.6 \times 10^{-19})^2}{(1.1 \times 10^{-10})(1 \times 10^{-10})} \approx 2.1 \times 10^{-18} \text{ J} = 1.4 \times 10^{5} \text{ K.}
\]

This is about \(10^5\) times larger than the magnetic dipolar interaction which we calculated in Exercise 1.3(c). So if the electron distribution is changed even by a small amount, the effect on the total energy of an atom can be significant. This explains why the effective molecular field is so large!

6.2.1 Quantum mechanics of the He atom

Now let’s calculate the energies for the excited state of helium where one electron is in the 1s atomic orbital and one is in the 2s, for both parallel and antiparallel spin arrangements, as shown in Fig. 6.4. (We can’t use the ground state 1s\(^2\) configuration as an illustration because here the two electrons can only exist in the antiparallel
We can write the electronic Hamiltonian, \( H \), as the sum of three terms – one term for each of the electrons interacting with the nucleus, plus one for the interaction between the electrons:

\[
H = H_1 + H_2 + H_{12}.
\]

Here \( H_1 \) and \( H_2 \) consist of the kinetic energy of each electron plus the Coulomb energy between the respective electron and the nucleus, and \( H_{12} \) is the Coulomb interaction between the two electrons:

\[
H_1 = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_e} \nabla_1^2 - \frac{Ze^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r_1},
\]

\[
H_2 = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_e} \nabla_2^2 - \frac{Ze^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r_2},
\]

\[
H_{12} = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r_{12}}.
\]

Here \( r_{12} \) is the distance between the electrons, and \( Z \) is the atomic number.

We could solve the Schrödinger equation for this Hamiltonian using quantum mechanical perturbation theory. (If you’d like to see the full derivation, there is a nice discussion in the book by Atkins [6].) However, to avoid being overwhelmed with quantum mechanics and losing the thread of the argument, instead we’ll just write down the form of the wavefunctions for the cases with spins aligned both parallel and antiparallel, using the Pauli exclusion principle to guide us. We need to use the full statement of the Pauli principle, that the total electronic wavefunction of a system must be antisymmetric with respect to the interchange of two electrons.

We can make a simplistic argument for why this is the case by thinking about our two-electron atom example – if two electrons occupy the same molecular orbital, then interchanging them will have no effect on the spatial part of the wavefunction. However, in order to occupy the same molecular orbital they must have opposite spins. So switching the electrons will change the sign of the spin part. The total wavefunction is the product of spin and spatial parts, and that product always ends up with the opposite sign.

Any state which is antisymmetric for the interchange of spin coordinates (i.e. in which the spins are aligned antiparallel) is always symmetric for the interchange of spatial coordinates. A molecular wavefunction for He which satisfies the spatial symmetry criterion has the form

\[
\Psi(r_1, r_2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ \phi_{1s}(r_1)\phi_{2s}(r_2) + \phi_{2s}(r_1)\phi_{1s}(r_2) \right],
\]

where \( \phi_{1s} \) and \( \phi_{2s} \) are the 1s and 2s atomic orbitals and \( r_1 \) and \( r_2 \) are the positions of electrons 1 and 2. (The \( 1/\sqrt{2} \) is for normalization.) Similarly, a state which
is symmetric for the interchange of spin coordinates (i.e. in which the spins are aligned parallel) must be antisymmetric for the interchange of spatial coordinates. A molecular wavefunction which satisfies this criterion has the form

$$\Psi(r_1, r_2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} [\phi_{1s}(r_1)\phi_{2s}(r_2) - \phi_{2s}(r_1)\phi_{1s}(r_2)].$$  \hspace{1cm} (6.17)

(If we had worked through all the quantum mechanics we would in fact have found three degenerate solutions with spatially symmetric wavefunctions, and one with the spatially antisymmetric wavefunction.)

Now let’s calculate the energy of each of these states using the Hamiltonian of Eq. (6.12). Using Dirac bra-ket notation, the total energy, $E$, is

$$E = \langle \Psi(r_1, r_2) | H | \Psi(r_1, r_2) \rangle$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left( \langle \phi_{1s}(r_1)\phi_{2s}(r_2) \pm \phi_{2s}(r_1)\phi_{1s}(r_2) \rangle \right)$$

$$\langle (H_1 + H_2 + H_{12}) \right| \left[ \phi_{1s}(r_1)\phi_{2s}(r_2) \pm \phi_{2s}(r_1)\phi_{1s}(r_2) \rangle \right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left( \langle \phi_{1s}(r_1) | H_1 | \phi_{1s}(r_1) \rangle + \langle \phi_{2s}(r_1) | H_1 | \phi_{2s}(r_1) \rangle$$

$$+ \langle \phi_{1s}(r_2) | H_2 | \phi_{1s}(r_2) \rangle + \langle \phi_{2s}(r_2) | H_2 | \phi_{2s}(r_2) \rangle$$

$$+ \langle \phi_{1s}(r_2) | H_{12} | \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{2s}(r_2) \rangle$$

$$+ \langle \phi_{2s}(r_1) | H_{12} | \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{2s}(r_2) \rangle$$

$$\pm \langle \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{2s}(r_2) | H_{12} | \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{1s}(r_2) \rangle$$

$$\pm \langle \phi_{2s}(r_1) \phi_{1s}(r_2) | H_{12} | \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{2s}(r_2) \rangle \right)$$

$$= E_1 + E_2 + K \pm J,$$  \hspace{1cm} (6.18)

using the conventional symbols for the integrals. Remember that the + sign corresponds to antiparallel spins, and the − sign to parallel spins. We see that the energy for parallel orientation of the spins is less than the energy for antiparallel orientation by an amount $2J$ when $J$ is positive. So a positive $J$ favors parallel spins, which corresponds to ferromagnetic ordering! Here

$$E_1 = \langle \phi_{1s}(r_1) | H_1 | \phi_{1s}(r_1) \rangle = \langle \phi_{1s}(r_2) | H_2 | \phi_{1s}(r_2) \rangle$$  \hspace{1cm} (6.19)

$$E_2 = \langle \phi_{2s}(r_1) | H_1 | \phi_{2s}(r_1) \rangle = \langle \phi_{2s}(r_2) | H_2 | \phi_{2s}(r_2) \rangle$$  \hspace{1cm} (6.20)

$$K = \langle \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{2s}(r_2) | H_{12} | \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{2s}(r_2) \rangle$$

$$= \langle \phi_{2s}(r_1) \phi_{1s}(r_2) | H_{12} | \phi_{2s}(r_1) \phi_{1s}(r_2) \rangle$$  \hspace{1cm} (6.21)

$$J = \langle \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{2s}(r_2) | H_{12} | \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{2s}(r_2) \rangle$$

$$= \langle \phi_{2s}(r_1) \phi_{1s}(r_2) | H_{12} | \phi_{1s}(r_1) \phi_{2s}(r_2) \rangle.$$  \hspace{1cm} (6.22)
6.3 Collective-electron theory of ferromagnetism

We have seen that Weiss’s idea of the molecular field, combined with the Langevin theory of localized moments, gives a rather good description of many properties of ferromagnetic materials. The temperature dependence of the spontaneous magnetization compares favorably with the observed values, and the existence of a phase transition to a paramagnetic state is explained. However, the localized-moment theory breaks down in one important respect – it is unable to account for the measured values of the magnetic moment per atom in some ferromagnetic materials, particularly in ferromagnetic metals. There are two significant discrepancies. First, according to the Weiss theory, the magnetic dipole moment on each atom or ion should be the same in both the ferromagnetic and paramagnetic phases. Experimentally this is not the case. Second, in the localized-moment theory, the magnetic dipole moment on each atom or ion should correspond to an integer number of electrons. Again this is not observed experimentally. To explain the data we need to use the band theory, or collective-electron theory, which we introduced earlier in our discussion of Pauli paramagnetism.

The mechanism producing magnetism in ferromagnetic metals is ultimately the same exchange energy that gives rise to Hund’s rules in atoms and the Weiss molecular field we discussed above. This exchange energy is minimized if all the electrons have the same spin. Opposing the alignment of spins in metals is the increased band energy involved in transferring electrons from the lowest band states (occupied with one up- and one down-spin electron per state) to band states of higher energy. This band energy cost prevents simple metals from being ferromagnetic.

In the elemental ferromagnetic transition metals, Fe, Ni, and Co, the Fermi energy lies in a region of overlapping 3d and 4s bands, as shown schematically in Fig. 6.5. We will assume that the structures of the 3d and 4s bands do not change markedly across the first transition series, and so any differences in electronic structure are caused entirely by changes in the Fermi energy. This approximation is known as the rigid-band model, and detailed band structure calculations have shown that it is a reasonable assumption.

As a result of the overlap between the 4s and 3d bands, the valence electrons only partially occupy each of these bands. For example, Ni, with 10 valence electrons per atom, has 9.46 electrons in the 3d band and 0.54 electrons in the 4s band. The 4s band is broad, with a low density of states at the Fermi level. Consequently, the energy which would be required to promote a 4s electron into a vacant state so that
it could reverse its spin is more than that which would be gained by the resulting decrease in exchange energy. By contrast, the 3d band is narrow and has a much higher density of states at the Fermi level. The large number of electrons near the Fermi level reduces the band energy required to reverse a spin, and the exchange effect dominates. If you don’t find it intuitive to think in terms of densities of states, Fig. 6.6 might be useful. Here, instead of drawing the density of states as a continuum it has been approximated as a series of discrete levels. The s band (on the left) has only one level per atom and the band is very broad. Therefore the levels are widely spaced and the band energy $\Delta E$ required to promote an electron to the next available level is large. In contrast, the d band (on the right) has five levels to fit in for each atom, and the band itself is very narrow. Therefore the levels are close together and the band energy to promote an electron is much smaller.

It is useful to picture the exchange interaction as shifting the energy of the 3d band for electrons with one spin direction relative to the band for electrons with the opposite spin direction. The magnitude of the shift is independent of the wavevector, giving a rigid displacement of the states in a band with one spin direction relative to the states with the opposite spin direction. If the Fermi energy lies within the 3d band, then the displacement will lead to more electrons of the lower-energy spin direction and hence a spontaneous magnetic moment in the ground state. The resulting band structure looks similar to that of a Pauli paramagnet in an external magnetic field. The difference is that in this case the exchange interaction causes the change in energy, and an external field is not required to induce the magnetization.
6.3 Collective-electron theory of ferromagnetism

Figure 6.6 Cartoon of 4s (left) and 3d (right) bands, represented as series of discrete energy levels instead of continuous densities of states.

Figure 6.7 Schematic 3d and 4s up- and down-spin densities of states in a transition metal, with exchange interaction included.

Figure 6.7 shows the 4s and 3d densities of states within this picture. The exchange splitting is negligible for the 4s electrons, but significant for 3d electrons. In Ni, for example, the exchange interaction displacement is so strong that one 3d sub-band is completely filled with five electrons, and all 0.54 holes are contained in the other sub-band. So the saturation magnetization of Ni is $M_s = 0.54 N \mu_B$, where $N$ is the number of Ni atoms per unit volume. We now see why the magnetic moments of the transition metals do not correspond to integer numbers of electrons!
This model also explains why the later transition metals, Cu and Zn, are not ferromagnetic. In Cu, the Fermi level lies *above* the 3d band. Since both the 3d sub-bands are filled, and the 4s band has no exchange-splitting, then the numbers of up- and down-spin electrons are equal. In Zn, both the 3d and 4s bands are filled and so do not contribute a magnetic moment.

For the lighter transition metals, Mn, Cr, etc., the exchange interaction is less strong, and the band energy is larger, so the energy balance is such that ferromagnetism is not observed. In fact both Mn and Cr actually have rather complicated spin arrangements which are antiferromagnetic in nature. More about that later!

### 6.3.1 The Slater–Pauling curve

The collective-electron and rigid-band models are further supported by the rather well-known plot known as the Slater–Pauling curve \[26, 27\]. In the late 1930s, Slater and Pauling independently calculated the saturation magnetization as a continuous function of the number of 3d and 4s valence electrons per atom across the first transition series. They used a rigid-band model, and obtained a linear increase in saturation magnetization from Cr to Fe, then a linear decrease, reaching zero magnetization at an electron density between Ni and Cu. They compared their calculated values with measured magnetizations of the pure ferromagnets Fe, Co, and Ni, as well as Fe–Co, Co–Ni, and Ni–Cu alloys. The results from Pauling’s paper are shown in Fig. 6.8. The measured values agree well with the theoretical values. Although there are only three *pure* ferromagnetic metals, many transition-metal alloys are ferromagnetic, and the saturation magnetic moment is more or less linearly dependent on the number of valence electrons.

### 6.4 Summary

In this chapter (and in the previous chapter on paramagnetism) we have introduced and applied two complementary theories of magnetism. In the localized-moment theory, the valence electrons are attached to the atoms and cannot move about the crystal. The valence electrons contribute a magnetic moment which is localized at the atom. The localized-moment theory accounts for the variation of spontaneous magnetization with temperature in the ferromagnetic phase, and explains the Curie–Weiss behavior above the Curie temperature. In the collective-electron model, or band theory, the electrons responsible for magnetic effects are ionized from the atoms, and are able to move through the crystal. Band theory explains the non-integer values of the magnetic moment per atom that are observed in metallic ferromagnets.
Of course in “real life” neither model is really correct, although there are some materials for which one or the other is a rather good approximation. In the rare-earth elements and their alloys, for example, magnetism comes from the tightly bound core f electrons, and so the localized-moment model works well. In materials such as Ni$_3$Al the electrons are highly itinerant, so the band theory gives accurate results. Transition metals show some features of both localization and itinerant electrons. Permanent magnets, such as NdFe$_{14}$B, are particularly hard to describe, since they combine the behavior of transition metals and rare earths.

By far the most successful method currently available for calculating the magnetic properties of solids is density functional theory (DFT). DFT is an *ab initio* many-body theory which includes (in principle) *all* the interactions between *all* the electrons. No assumptions are made as to whether the electrons are localized or itinerant – rather the electrons choose the arrangement which will give them the lowest possible total energy. Unfortunately, DFT calculations are both computationally intensive and difficult, in particular because the exact form of the exchange and correlation part of the inter-electronic interaction energy is not known. As an example, it has only recently been possible to obtain the correct body-centered cubic, ferromagnetic ground state for iron [28]. (Earlier studies predicted that it should be non-magnetic and face-centered cubic!) An excellent review of the use of DFT to calculate the properties of magnetic materials and beyond is given in the September 2006 issue of the *Bulletin of the Materials Research Society*.
Homework

Exercises

6.1 The Curie temperature of nickel, $T_C = 628.3$ K, and the saturation magnetization is $0.6\mu_B$ per atom. Calculate the molecular field according to the Weiss theory. Your answer should be very large!

6.2 In Exercise 1.3 you calculated the field generated by an electron circulating in a 1 Å radius orbit, at a distance of 3 Å from the center of the orbit. These values are typical for an atom in a transition-metal crystal.
(a) To what Curie temperature would this field correspond?
(b) You also calculated the dipole moment of the electron. To what extent would your calculated magnetic moment be affected by an external field of, say, 50 Oe? (Use $E = -m \cdot H$ and compare the result with the thermal energy, $k_B T$, at room temperature.)

6.3 Review question
(a) Using Ampère’s circuital law or the Biot–Savart law, make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the size of the magnetic field generated by the valence electrons in a Ni atom at a distance corresponding to the Ni–Ni spacing in a solid sample of Ni. (Assume that the field arises from the current generated by the circulation of unpaired electrons around the nucleus.)
(b) Use Hund’s rules to determine the values of $S$, $L$, and $J$ for an isolated Ni atom with electronic structure (4s)²(3d)⁸. What are the allowed values of the magnetic moment along the field axis for a Ni atom?
(c) Use your answers to parts (a) and (b) to estimate the difference in magnetic dipole energy between Ni atoms aligned parallel and antiparallel to each other.
(d) Given that the Curie temperature of Ni is 358 °C, how does the magnetic dipole energy which you calculated in (c) compare with the actual strength of the ferromagnetic coupling between Ni atoms?
(e) Explain briefly (a few sentences) what the true origin of the ferromagnetic coupling is in Ni.
(f) The actual value of the magnetic dipole moment in metallic Ni is $0.54\mu_B$. Why does this number not correspond to an integer number of electrons? (You’ll probably need a diagram to explain this one!)

Further reading

Ferromagnetic domains

Ferromagnetic domains are small regions in ferromagnetic materials within which all the magnetic dipoles are aligned parallel to each other. When a ferromagnetic material is in its demagnetized state, the magnetization vectors in different domains have different orientations, and the total magnetization averages to zero. The process of magnetization causes all the domains to orient in the same direction. The purpose of this chapter is to explain why domains occur, to describe their structure and the structure of their boundaries, and to discuss how they affect the properties of materials. As a preliminary, we will describe some experiments which allow us to observe domains directly with rather simple equipment.

7.1 Observing domains

Domains are usually too small to be seen using the naked eye. Fortunately there are a number of rather straightforward methods for observing them. The first method was developed by Francis Bitter in 1931 [29]. In the Bitter method, the surface of the sample is covered with an aqueous solution of very small colloidal particles of magnetite, Fe$_3$O$_4$. The magnetite deposits as a band along the domain boundaries, at their intersection with the sample surface. The outlines of the domains can then be seen using a microscope. Figure 7.1 is taken from Bitter’s original 1931 publication; the light-colored lines are magnetite deposits on a crystal of nickel at 16 times magnification.

O care! O guilt! – O vales and plains,
Here, ’mid his own unvexed domains,
A Genius dwells... .

As we will discuss later in the chapter, at the domain boundaries the directions of the magnetic dipole moments change, and poles are formed at the surface of the sample. A magnetic field originates at the pole, and this attracts the fine magnetic particles to it. Note therefore that the Bitter method actually observes the domain boundaries, rather than the domains themselves. The technique can also be used to observe domain-wall motion, because the magnetite particles follow the intersection of the wall with the surface. However the sample must first be carefully cleaned and polished so that the magnetite particles don’t get stuck in cracks or around impurities.

It is also possible to observe domains using polarized light. As a result of the magneto-optic effect (which we will discuss in detail in Chapter 16), the plane of polarized light is rotated when it either passes through, or is reflected from, magnetic material. The direction of rotation depends on the orientation of magnetization. Therefore, regions of the sample with opposite orientations of the magnetization will rotate the polarized light in opposite directions. This method was first used in the early 1950s [30]; in Fig. 7.2 we show photographs of domains in demagnetized silicon iron from an early application of the technique [31].

Note that both the Bitter and magneto-optic techniques are sensitive to the domain structure at the surface of the sample. The surface domain structure is sensitive to local details of flux closure on the surface, and can be more complicated than the basic domain structure running through the bulk of the sample.
7.2 Why domains occur

We saw in the previous chapter that quantum mechanics gives rise to an exchange energy which tends to align electron spins, and hence their magnetic dipole moments, parallel to each other. The exchange energy provides a strong driving force for parallel alignment therefore we might expect that ferromagnetic materials should be composed of one single domain, with all dipoles aligned in the same direction.

Although a single domain would certainly minimize the exchange contribution to the total energy, there are a number of other contributions to the total magnetic energy of a ferromagnet. The formation of domains allows a ferromagnetic material to minimize its total magnetic energy, of which the exchange energy is just one component. The other main contributors to the magnetic energy are the magnetostatic energy, which is the principal driving force for domain formation, and the magnetocrystalline and magnetostrictive energies, which influence the shape and size of domains. Next we will discuss each of these energy contributions in turn, and show how they determine the formation and structure of domains in ferromagnetic materials.

7.2.1 Magnetostatic energy

A magnetized block of ferromagnetic material containing a single domain has a macroscopic magnetization. The magnetization causes the block to behave as a magnet, with a magnetic field around it. Figure 7.3(a) illustrates a magnetized block with its associated external field. It is apparent from the figure that the field acts to magnetize the block in the opposite direction from its own magnetization. For this
reason it is called the *demagnetizing field*, $H_d$. We will encounter demagnetizing fields again in Chapter 11 when we discuss shape anisotropy.

The demagnetizing field causes a magnetostatic energy which depends on the shape of the sample. It is this magnetostatic energy which allows the block to do work such as lifting another ferromagnet against the force of gravity. The magnetostatic energy can be reduced by reducing the external demagnetizing field; one way to do this is to divide the block into domains, as shown in Fig. 7.3(b). Here the external field is lower, so that the block is capable of doing less work, and (conversely) is storing less magnetostatic energy. Of course the magnetic moments at the boundary between the two domains are not able to align parallel, so the formation of domains increases the exchange energy of the block.

To reduce the magnetostatic energy to zero, we need a domain pattern which leaves no magnetic poles at the surface of the block. One way to achieve this is shown in Fig. 7.3(c). Before we can decide whether this is a likely domain pattern, we need to understand a little about the magnetocrystalline and magnetostrictive energy contributions.

### 7.2.2 Magnetocrystalline energy

The magnetization in ferromagnetic crystals tends to align along certain preferred crystallographic directions. The preferred directions are called the “easy” axes, since it is easiest to magnetize a demagnetized sample to saturation if the external field is applied along a preferred direction. Figure 7.4 shows schematic magnetization curves for a ferromagnetic single crystal, with the field applied along the easy and hard axes. In both cases the same saturation magnetization is achieved, but a
7.2 Why domains occur

Figure 7.4 Schematic magnetization curves for a ferromagnet with the field oriented along the hard and easy directions.

Figure 7.5 Easy, medium, and hard directions of magnetization in a unit cell of bcc iron.

much larger applied field is required to reach saturation along the hard axis than along the easy axis.

Different materials have different easy axes. In body-centered cubic (bcc) iron the easy axis is the $\langle 100 \rangle$ direction (the cube edge). Of course, since bcc iron is a cubic crystal, all six cube edge orientations ($\langle 100 \rangle$, $\langle 010 \rangle$, $\langle 001 \rangle$, $\langle 100 \rangle$, $\langle 010 \rangle$, and $\langle 001 \rangle$) are in fact equivalent easy axes. The body diagonal is the hard axis of magnetization, and other orientations, such as the face diagonal, are intermediate. A unit cell of iron, with the easy, medium, and hard directions of magnetization labeled, is shown in Fig. 7.5.
By contrast, the easy axis of face-centered cubic (fcc) Ni is the ⟨111⟩ body diagonal, and in hexagonal close-packed (hcp) Co it is the ⟨0001⟩ direction.

The phenomenon that causes the magnetization to align itself along a preferred crystallographic direction is the magnetocrystalline anisotropy. The crystal is higher in energy when the magnetization points along the hard direction than along the easy direction, and the energy difference per unit volume between samples magnetized along easy and hard directions is called the magnetocrystalline anisotropy energy. In fact the area between hard and easy magnetization curves such as those in Fig. 7.4 is a measure of the magnetocrystalline energy for that material. We will discuss the details of magnetocrystalline anisotropy, including its physical origin, how it is measured, and why it is useful, in Chapter 11. For now we are interested in how it affects the structure of magnetic domains.

To minimize the magnetocrystalline energy, domains will form so that their magnetizations point along easy crystallographic directions. So, for example, the “vertical” axis in Fig. 7.3 should correspond to a cube edge in bcc iron. Because of the cubic symmetry, the horizontal direction is also an easy axis for bcc iron; therefore the domain arrangement shown in Fig. 7.3(c) has a low magnetocrystalline energy.

The horizontal domains at the top and bottom of the crystal in Fig. 7.3(c) are called “domains of closure,” and they form readily when a material has easy axes perpendicular to each other. In such materials, this configuration is particularly favorable because it eliminates the demagnetizing field, and hence the magnetostatic energy, without increasing the magnetocrystalline anisotropy energy. However, an additional energy, called the magnetostrictive energy, is introduced; we discuss this next.

One more point to note is that the magnetocrystalline energy clearly affects the structure of the domain boundaries. Within the region between domains the direction of magnetization changes, and therefore cannot be aligned along an easy direction. So, like the exchange energy, the magnetocrystalline energy prefers large domains with few boundaries.

### 7.2.3 Magnetostrictive energy

When a ferromagnetic material is magnetized it undergoes a change in length known as magnetostriction. Some materials, such as iron, elongate along the direction of magnetization and are said to have a positive magnetostriction. Others, such as nickel, contract and have negative magnetostriction. For most materials the length changes are very small – tens of parts per million – but they are sufficient to influence the domain structure.
7.3 Domain walls

In iron, magnetostriction causes the triangular domains of closure to try to elongate horizontally, whereas the long vertical domains try to elongate vertically, as shown in Fig. 7.6. Clearly the horizontal and vertical domains can’t elongate at the same time, and instead an elastic strain energy term is added to the total energy. The elastic energy is proportional to the volume of the domains of closure, and can be lowered by reducing the size of the closure domains, which in turn requires smaller primary domains. Of course making smaller domains introduces additional domain walls, with a corresponding increase in exchange and magnetostatic energy. The total energy is reduced by a compromise domain arrangement such as that shown in Fig. 7.7.

7.3 Domain walls

The boundaries between adjacent domains in bulk ferromagnetic materials are called domain walls, or Bloch walls. They are about four-millionths of an inch (∼10 μm) in thickness, and across this distance the direction of magnetization changes usually by either 180° or 90°.

The width of domain walls is again determined by a balance between competing energy contributions. The exchange energy is optimized if adjacent magnetic moments are parallel, or as close to parallel as possible, to each other. This favors wide walls, so that the change in angle of the moments between adjacent planes of atoms can be as small as possible. However the magnetocrystalline anisotropy is optimized if the moments are aligned as closely as possible to the easy axes.
Ferromagnetic domains

Figure 7.7 A domain arrangement that reduces the sum of the exchange, magnetostatic, magnetocrystalline, and domain-wall energies to a minimum.

Figure 7.8 Change in orientation of the magnetic dipoles in a 180° twist boundary.

This favors narrow walls with a sharp transition between the domains, so that few moments have unfavorable crystalline alignment in the transition region. In practice a compromise is reached which minimizes the total energy across the boundary.

The most energetically favorable types of domain wall are those which do not produce magnetic poles within the material, and therefore don’t introduce demagnetizing fields. One such wall is the twist boundary, illustrated for a 180° boundary in Fig. 7.8. Here the magnetization perpendicular to the boundary does not change across the wall; therefore no magnetic poles or demagnetizing fields
arise. Also stable are 90° tilt boundaries, as shown in Fig. 7.9. The magnetic moments rotate through the wall in such a way that they make a constant angle of 45° with both the wall normal and the surface.

Another kind of domain wall, called a Néel wall, occurs in thin films of magnetic materials. In Néel walls the spins rotate around an axis normal to the surface of the film, rather than around an axis normal to the domain wall. The spin rotation in a Néel wall is shown in plan view in Fig. 7.10. Néel walls are energetically favorable in thin films because free poles are formed on the wall surface, rather than the film surface, causing a reduction in magnetostatic energy.

7.4 Magnetization and hysteresis

Now that we understand a little about the structure and origin of domains, let’s look at how they influence the magnetization and hysteresis curves of ferromagnetic materials. Figure 7.11 shows a schematic magnetization curve for a ferromagnetic material, with a sketch of the domain structure at each stage of the magnetization. The magnetic field is applied at an angle (horizontal in the picture) which is slightly off the easy axis of magnetization. In the initial demagnetized state, the domains are
arranged such that the magnetization averages to zero. When the field is applied, the domain whose magnetization is closest to the field direction starts to grow at the expense of the other domains. The growth occurs by domain-wall motion. At first the domain-wall motion is reversible; if the field is removed during the reversible stage, the magnetization retraces its path and the demagnetized state is regained. In this region of the magnetization curve the sample does not show hysteresis.

After a while, the moving domain walls encounter imperfections such as defects or dislocations in the crystal. Crystal imperfections have an associated magnetostatic energy. However, when a domain boundary intersects the imperfection, this magnetostatic energy can be eliminated, as shown in Fig. 7.12. The intersection of the domain boundary with the imperfection is a local energy minimum. As a result the domain boundary will tend to stay pinned at the imperfection, and energy is required to move it past the imperfection. This energy is provided by the external magnetic field. A typical variation of Bloch wall energy with position in an imperfect crystal is shown in Fig. 7.13.

A schematic of the motion of a boundary past an imperfection is shown in Fig. 7.14. When the boundary moves as a result of a change in the applied field, the domains of closure cling to the imperfection forming spike-like domains, which continue to stretch as the boundary is forced to move further. Eventually the spike domains snap off and the boundary can move freely again. The field required to snap the spike domains off the imperfections corresponds to the coercive force of the material. A photograph of spike domains in single crystals of silicon iron, highlighted using the colloidal magnetite method, is shown in Fig. 7.15 [32].
7.4 Magnetization and hysteresis

Figure 7.12 (a) Magnetostatic energy around a defect or vacancy enclosed entirely within a domain. (b) The magnetostatic energy can be eliminated if the domain wall intersects the defect and closure domains form.

Figure 7.13 Variation of the energy of a Bloch wall with position in an imperfect crystal. The energy minima occur when walls intersect defects or vacancies.

Figure 7.14 Formation of spike domains as a domain boundary moves past a defect.
When the spikes snap from the domain boundary, the discontinuous jump in the boundary causes a sharp change in flux. The change in flux can be observed by winding a coil around the specimen and connecting it to an amplifier and loudspeaker. Even if the applied field is increased very smoothly, crackling noises are heard from the loudspeaker. This phenomenon is known as the Barkhausen effect. It was first observed in 1919 [33], and provided the first experimental evidence for the existence of domains. Figure 7.16 is a schematic enlargement of a portion of a magnetization curve, showing the sharp changes in magnetization produced by the Barkhausen mechanism.

Eventually the applied field is sufficient to eliminate all domain walls from the sample, leaving a single domain, with its magnetization pointing along the easy axis oriented most closely to the external magnetic field. Further increase in magnetization can only occur by rotating the magnetic dipoles from the easy axis of magnetization into the direction of the applied field. In crystals with large magnetocrystalline anisotropy, large fields can be required to reach the saturation magnetization.

As soon as the magnetic field is removed, the dipoles rotate back to their easy axis of magnetization, and the net magnetic moment along the field direction
7.4 Magnetization and hysteresis

Figure 7.16 Enlargement of the magnetization curve to show the Barkhausen noise.

decreases. Since the dipole rotation part of the magnetization process did not involve domain-wall motion, it is entirely reversible. Next, the demagnetizing field in the sample initiates the growth of reverse magnetic domains which allow the sample to be partially demagnetized. However, the domain walls are unable to fully reverse their motion back to their original positions. This is because the demagnetization process is driven by the demagnetizing field, rather than an applied external field, and the demagnetizing field is not strong enough to overcome the energy barriers encountered when the domain walls intersect crystal imperfections. As a result, the magnetization curve shows hysteresis, and some magnetization remains in the sample even when the field is removed completely. The coercive field is defined as the additional field, applied in the reverse direction, which is needed to reduce the magnetization to zero.

So we see that the hysteresis properties of a sample depend in large part on its purity and quality. This means that we can engineer materials to optimize their properties for specific applications. For example, a sample with many defects or impurities will require a large field to magnetize it, but will retain much of its magnetization when the field is removed. As we mentioned in Chapter 2, materials which are characterized by high remanence and large coercive field are known as hard magnetic materials, and are important as permanent magnets. High-purity materials, with few dislocations or dopants, are easily magnetized and demagnetized – these are known as soft magnetic materials. Soft magnetic materials are used in electromagnets and transformer cores, where they must be able to reverse their direction of magnetization rapidly.

Finally, in Fig. 7.17, we show some real photographs of the domain structure in gadolinium–iron garnet as the field is cycled from zero to a value large enough to create a single domain oriented in one direction, back to zero, and then to a large
value in the opposite direction [34]. The dark and light regions, obtained using the magneto-optic Faraday effect, which we will discuss in Chapter 16, indicate domains of opposite magnetization. The hysteresis can be seen by comparing the third and sixth frames, which occur at similar fields (the first while the field is increasing, and the second while it is being reduced from its maximum value), but show quite different domain structures.

**Homework**

**Exercises**

7.1 In this problem we will explore the relationship between domains and the magnetization process in a ferromagnetic material.

(a) Why do domains form in ferromagnetic materials? What are the various contributions to the total energy of a ferromagnetic material, and how do they determine the size and shape of domains?

(b) Sketch and explain how the domain structure of an initially unmagnetized sample of a ferromagnetic material changes during magnetization to saturation.

(c) What characteristics would you expect to see in the magnetization curve and hysteresis loop of a perfect (defect-free) ferromagnetic material with a large magnetocrystalline anisotropy? Suggest an application for such a material.

(d) What characteristics would you expect in the magnetization curve and hysteresis loop of a ferromagnetic material which has many defects? Suggest an application for such a material.

(e) Figure 7.18 shows the major hysteresis loop for a ferromagnetic material (solid line) and a minor hysteresis loop (dashed line). We have discussed the domain-based explanation for the form of the major hysteresis loop. Describe the corresponding variation in domain pattern around the minor hysteresis loop.

(f) Figure 7.19 again shows the major hysteresis loop for our ferromagnetic material (solid line), and the dashed line shows a spiral path which returns the material back to the unmagnetized state. Give a domain-based explanation for the form of the path. How else might we convert a ferromagnetic material to an unmagnetized state?

7.2 The boundary between domains is called a domain wall. The exchange energy cost per square meter, $\sigma_{ex}$, within a domain wall is given by

$$\sigma_{ex} = \frac{k_B T_C}{2} \left( \frac{\pi}{N} \right)^2 N \frac{1}{a^2} \text{ J/m}^2, \quad (7.1)$$

where $N + 1$ is the number of atomic layers in the wall, and $a$ is the spacing between the atoms. The anisotropy energy cost per square meter, $\sigma_A$, is given by

$$\sigma_A = K Na \text{ J/m}^2, \quad (7.2)$$

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژي
Figure 7.17 Domains in gadolinium–iron garnet when the field is cycled from zero to a positive value, back to zero, then to a negative value. The number below each frame gives the field in oersteds. Width of each frame 0.6 mm. From [34]. Copyright 1958 American Institute of Physics. Reproduced with permission.
Figure 7.18 Major (solid line) and minor (dashed line) hysteresis loops for a ferromagnetic material.

Figure 7.19 Return of a ferromagnetic material to the unmagnetized state.
where $K$, the magnetocrystalline anisotropy constant, is a measure of the cost of not having all the atoms aligned along easy axes.

(a) Plot the form of the exchange energy cost, the anisotropy energy cost, and the sum of these two energy costs, for iron, for which $K = 0.5 \times 10^5 \text{ J/m}^3$, $a = 0.3 \text{ nm}$, and $T_C = 770 \degree \text{C}$.

(b) Assuming that the exchange and anisotropy energies are the principal contributors to the domain-wall energy, derive an expression for the number of atomic layers in a domain wall, as a function of the Curie temperature, the anisotropy constant, and the atomic spacing.

(c) Calculate the thickness of a domain wall in iron. How much energy is stored in $1 \text{ m}^2$ of an iron domain wall?

Further reading

A large number of antiferromagnetic materials is now known; these are generally compounds of the transition metals containing oxygen or sulphur. They are extremely interesting from the theoretical viewpoint but do not seem to have any applications.


Now that we have studied the phenomenon of cooperative ordering in ferromagnetic materials, it is time to study the properties of antiferromagnets. In antiferromagnetic materials, the interaction between the magnetic moments tends to align adjacent moments antiparallel to each other. We can think of antiferromagnets as containing two interpenetrating and identical sublattices of magnetic ions, as illustrated in Fig. 8.1. Although one set of magnetic ions is spontaneously magnetized below some critical temperature (called the Néel temperature, \( T_N \)), the second set is spontaneously magnetized by the same amount in the opposite direction. As a result, antiferromagnets have no net spontaneous magnetization, and their response to external fields at a fixed temperature is similar to that of paramagnetic materials – the magnetization is linear in the applied field, and the susceptibility is small and positive. The temperature dependence of the susceptibility above the Néel temperature is also similar to that of a paramagnet, but below \( T_N \) it decreases with decreasing temperature, as shown in Fig. 8.2.

The first direct imaging of the magnetic structure of antiferromagnets was provided by neutron diffraction experiments. We will begin this chapter by reviewing the physics of neutron diffraction, and showing some examples of its successes. Then we will use the localized-moment theory to understand the observed temperature dependence of susceptibility in antiferromagnets. Although, like the paramagnets, antiferromagnetic materials do not strongly concentrate the magnetic flux, the theoretical analysis is also relevant for the ferrimagnets, which have
antiferromagnetic ordering *and* a net magnetization; we will discuss these in the next chapter. Finally, we will explain the origin of the antiferromagnetic ordering in some representative magnetic materials by analyzing the nature of the chemical bonding between the magnetic ions.

### 8.1 Neutron diffraction

The first direct evidence for the existence of antiferromagnetic ordering was provided in 1949, when Shull and Smart [35] obtained the neutron diffraction spectrum of manganese oxide, MnO. Their data showed that the spins on the Mn$^{2+}$ ions are divided into two sets, one antiparallel to the other. Before this breakthrough, the only evidence for antiferromagnetism was the agreement between the observed temperature dependence of the susceptibility, and the curves predicted using the Curie–Weiss theory. In this section we will review the basics of neutron diffraction
Antiferromagnetism

Figure 8.3 Bragg diffraction from planes of atoms. Diffraction peaks are only observed in directions which satisfy the Bragg condition.

and its use in investigating magnetic structure. For an extensive description, see [36].

Neutron diffraction is able to determine the magnetic ordering of materials because neutrons have a magnetic moment and so are scattered by the magnetic moments of electrons. This is in contrast to X-rays, which are scattered by electron density and so are not sensitive to magnetic ordering. All diffraction methods are sensitive to the symmetry of the material, and magnetic ordering reduces the symmetry of a material compared to the same material with the magnetic moments oriented randomly. As a result, the neutron diffraction pattern of an antiferromagnet is different above and below the Néel temperature.

Just like X-rays, the wavelength, λ, of diffracted neutrons obeys the Bragg equation,

\[ n\lambda = 2d \sin \theta. \]  \hspace{1cm} (8.1)

The geometry for Bragg diffraction is shown in Fig. 8.3. Each plane of atoms scatters the incident beam in all directions, and most of the scattered beams interfere destructively. Diffraction peaks can only be observed in the directions given by the Bragg equation, where the path difference between scattered beams is a whole number of wavelengths, and constructive interference occurs.

However, the number of lines which are actually observed in a diffraction pattern can be fewer than those predicted by the Bragg equation, because of the crystal symmetry. This is illustrated for the (100) reflection from a body-centered cubic lattice in Fig. 8.4. Planes (1) and (3) are the (100) planes, and plane (2) is the intermediate plane which contains the body-centered atom. Let’s imagine that the crystal is oriented such that the beams scattered from planes (1) and (3) are in phase by the Bragg condition. Then the difference between beams scattered from (1) and (3) must be an integer number of wavelengths, \( n\lambda \). It’s obvious from the figure that the distance difference between beams scattered from (1) and (2) or (2) and (3) is exactly half of that between those scattered from (1) and (3), that is, a half-integer number of wavelengths. So the reflection from plane (2) is exactly
out of phase with that from planes (1) and (3). As a result, the diffracted beams interfere destructively and there is no (100) diffraction line.

If the atoms in plane (2) are different from those in planes (1) and (3), then the beams scattered from (2) will have a different amplitude to those scattered from (1) and (3), and the diffracted beams will no longer cancel. In this case the (100) line will be visible. For neutron scattering, a different orientation of the magnetic moment causes a different scattering amplitude. So if the material orders such that, for example, the atoms in the odd-numbered planes are all up-spin, and those in the even-numbered planes are down-spin, then the (100) line will in fact be present. As a result, additional lines appear in the neutron diffraction spectrum when an antiferromagnet is cooled below its Néel temperature. These lines indicate the onset of magnetic ordering and are called superlattice lines.

MnO has the face-centered cubic rock-salt structure, with the Mn$^{2+}$ ions arranged as shown in Fig. 8.5 (left) (the oxygen ions are omitted for clarity). Below the Néel temperature the magnetic moments in each (111) plane align parallel to each other, and they are in opposite directions in successive (111) planes. This magnetic ordering is shown in Fig. 8.5 (right). For the face-centered cubic lattice, it turns out that the diffraction line corresponding to the $(hkl)$ plane only appears if the Miller indices, $h$, $k$, and $l$, are either all odd or all even. The neutron diffraction spectrum of MnO above the Néel temperature is shown in the lower part of Fig. 8.6. As predicted, the (100) and (110) peaks are missing. Below the Néel temperature, the unit cell size doubles, and many more lines appear in the spectrum, as shown in the upper part of Fig. 8.6. Detailed analysis of the spectrum confirms the magnetic ordering shown in Fig. 8.5.

In addition to its sensitivity to magnetic ordering, neutron diffraction has a number of other advantages over more common diffraction techniques such as X-ray diffraction. First, the neutron scattering amplitude varies in an irregular way with atomic number. So neutrons are able to distinguish elements which are adjacent in the periodic table, such as Fe and Co. This is important in the study of ordering in magnetic alloys. (By contrast, the X-ray scattering amplitude is proportional to the...
Figure 8.5 Structure of MnO above (left) and below (right) the Néel temperature.

Figure 8.6 Neutron diffraction patterns for MnO at room temperature (lower panel) and at 80 K (upper panel). After [35]. Copyright 1949 the American Physical Society. Reproduced with permission.
atomic number.) In addition, the wavelength of a neutron beam is approximately equal to a typical atomic spacing at room temperature. We can check this using the de Broglie relation, that wavelength is related to the momentum by \( \lambda = \frac{h}{p} \), where \( h \) is Planck’s constant. A neutron has three translational degrees of freedom, so its momentum, \( p \), is determined from \( p^2 / 2m_N = 3k_B T \), where \( m_N \) is the mass of a neutron. Combining these two expressions gives a neutron wavelength of 1.49 Å at 20 °C.

8.2 Weiss theory of antiferromagnetism

The Weiss localized-moment theory can be applied to antiferromagnets, using a formalism which is similar to that which we used earlier for para- and ferromagnets. The algebra was first worked out by Néel [37], who showed that the observed temperature dependence of the susceptibility could be explained by the magnetic ordering which we are now familiar with as antiferromagnetism. In fact the Weiss theory works rather well for antiferromagnets, since most antiferromagnetic materials are ionic salts with localized magnetic moments.

Before the publication of Néel’s classic paper, it was known empirically that the susceptibility of antiferromagnets depends on the temperature, as shown in Fig. 8.7. Above the Néel temperature, \( T_N \), the equation of the susceptibility line is

\[
\chi = \frac{C}{T - (-\theta)}. \tag{8.2}
\]

The susceptibility has a Curie–Weiss dependence on the temperature but with a negative value of \( \theta \). Remember (from Section 5.2) that \( \theta \propto \gamma \), the molecular field constant. So a negative value for \( \theta \) suggests the existence of a negative Weiss molecular field, which causes the moments to anti-align! The phase transition to the antiferromagnetic state occurs at \( T_N \), and below this temperature the susceptibility decreases slightly with decreasing temperature.

Let’s consider the simplest possible example to see how the Weiss localized-moment theory accounts for this behavior. We will divide the lattice into two structurally identical sublattices containing atoms labeled \( A \) and \( B \), respectively, and assume that the only important interactions are between nearest-neighbor \( A–B \) pairs of atoms. So we will ignore both \( A–A \) and \( B–B \) interactions. Then there will be two Weiss molecular fields. The field which acts on the \( A \) sublattice is proportional, but in the opposite direction, to the magnetization of the \( B \) sublattice. That is,

\[
H^A_W = -\gamma M_B. \tag{8.3}
\]
Similarly, the field acting on sublattice $B$ is proportional and in the opposite direction to the magnetization of sublattice $A$:

$$H^B_W = -\gamma M_A.$$  \hfill (8.4)

In both cases the minus signs indicate that the molecular field is opposite to the magnetization of the other sublattice.

### 8.2.1 Susceptibility above $T_N$

Above $T_N$, we can use the Curie law to obtain an expression for the susceptibility, just as we did for non-ideal paramagnets in Section 5.2 and for ferromagnets in Section 6.1. The Curie law tells us that $\chi = M/H = C/T$, so $M = HC/T$. Then, for sublattice $A$,

$$M_A = \frac{C'(H - \gamma M_B)}{T},$$  \hfill (8.5)

and for sublattice $B$,

$$M_B = \frac{C'(H - \gamma M_A)}{T},$$  \hfill (8.6)

where $H$ is the external applied field. The total magnetization $M = M_A + M_B$, and solving Eqs. (8.5) and (8.6) simultaneously gives

$$M = \frac{2C'H}{T + C'\gamma}.$$  \hfill (8.7)
So

\[
\chi = \frac{M}{H} = \frac{2C'}{T + C'\gamma} = \frac{C}{T + \theta}.
\]

This is the Curie–Weiss law with a negative value of \(\theta\), as we expected.

### 8.2.2 Weiss theory at \(T_N\)

At the Néel temperature, if there is no external magnetic field, then Eq. (8.5) becomes

\[
M_A = -\frac{C'\gamma M_B}{T_N} = -\frac{\theta M_B}{T_N}.
\]

But we know that \(M_A = -M_B\); therefore

\[
\theta = T_N.
\]

Within the Weiss theory, the Néel temperature is equal to the value of \(\theta\) obtained from the plot of inverse susceptibility versus temperature. In practice, we find that \(\theta\) is somewhat larger than \(T_N\). This is not a breakdown of the localized-moment model, but the result of next-nearest-neighbor interactions which we have not included in our derivation.

### 8.2.3 Spontaneous magnetization below \(T_N\)

Below the Néel temperature, each sublattice is spontaneously magnetized in zero applied field by the molecular field created by the other sublattice. We can write down expressions for the spontaneous magnetization, just as we did in Section 6.1.2 for ferromagnets. Again, the most straightforward method of solution is the graphical approach. The spontaneous magnetizations obtained for each sublattice using the graphical method are shown as a function of temperature in Fig. 8.8. At every temperature the net spontaneous magnetization is zero.

### 8.2.4 Susceptibility below \(T_N\)

The susceptibility below \(T_N\) depends on the angle between the direction of spontaneous magnetization of the sublattices and the direction of the applied external field.
Figure 8.8 Spontaneous magnetization of the $A$ and $B$ sublattices in antiferromagnetic materials below $T_N$.

Figure 8.9 Two possible orientations of the applied field relative to the magnetization direction in an antiferromagnet.

field. This is another example of magnetic anisotropy, which we introduced in the previous chapter, and which we will discuss in detail in Chapter 11. There are two limiting cases – with the field applied parallel or perpendicular to the magnetization direction, as shown in Fig. 8.9.

**Field parallel to magnetization**

The spontaneous magnetizations of the $A$ and $B$ sublattices, $M_A$ and $M_B$, have a Langevin (or Brillouin) function dependence on $H$ and $T$, as shown in Fig. 8.10. (As before, $\alpha = mH/k_BT$, where $m$ and $H$ represent the magnitudes of the magnetic moment and field vectors, respectively.) If the external field is applied parallel to the magnetization of the $A$ sublattice, then the magnetization of the $A$ sublattice increases by an amount $\delta M_A$, and that of the $B$ sublattice decreases by $\delta M_B$. The
8.2 Weiss theory of antiferromagnetism

Figure 8.10 Calculation of the susceptibility of an antiferromagnet, with $H$ parallel to $M$.

Material now has a non-zero magnetization, which is

$$M = M_A - M_B$$

(8.13)

$$= |\delta M_A| + |\delta M_B|.$$  

(8.14)

From Fig. 8.10 we can see that, provided the change in magnetization is not too large, the change in magnetization is just the slope of the Brillouin function multiplied by the change in $\alpha$:

$$\delta \alpha = \frac{m}{k_B T} \delta H$$

(8.15)

$$= \frac{m}{k_B T} (H - \gamma |\delta M_B|).$$

(8.16)

Working through the mathematics to calculate the magnetization, then dividing by the external field, gives the following expression for the susceptibility:

$$\chi_\parallel = \frac{2 N m^2 B'(J, \alpha)}{2 k_B T + N m^2 \gamma B'(J, \alpha)},$$

(8.17)

where $N$ is the number of atoms per unit volume and $B'(J, \alpha)$ is the derivative of the Brillouin function with respect to $\alpha$, evaluated at the point $\alpha_0$ corresponding to the spontaneous magnetization of each sublattice.

The susceptibility tends to zero at 0 K, because at 0 K the sublattices are perfectly anti-aligned, and there are no thermal fluctuations. Therefore an external field is unable to exert any torque on the magnetic moments. It is interesting to note that a ferromagnetic material below its Curie temperature also follows this expression for the susceptibility. However, the change in magnetization as a result of the applied field is negligible compared with the spontaneous magnetization of the ferromagnet and can only be detected at very large external fields. The increase in magnetization of a ferromagnet as a result of a large external field is known as forced magnetization.
Field perpendicular to magnetization

If the external field is applied perpendicular to the direction of magnetization, then the atomic magnetic moments are rotated by the applied field, as shown in Fig. 8.11. The rotation creates a magnetization in the field direction, and sets up a molecular field which opposes the magnetization. At equilibrium, the external field, $H$, is exactly balanced by the molecular field, so

$$H = H_W$$

$$= 2 \times H_W \sin \theta \quad (8.19)$$

$$= 2\gamma M_A \sin \theta \quad (8.20)$$

$$= \gamma M \quad (8.21)$$

(since $M = 2M_A \sin \theta$). So the susceptibility is

$$\chi_\perp = \frac{M}{H} = \frac{1}{\gamma} \quad (8.22)$$

We see that the perpendicular susceptibility, $\chi_\perp$, is constant below the Néel temperature.

Powdered samples

In powdered or polycrystalline samples, which have no preferred orientation of the crystals, the susceptibility is obtained by averaging over all possible orientations. Then

$$\chi_p = \chi_\parallel \langle \cos^2 \theta \rangle + \chi_\perp \langle \sin^2 \theta \rangle \quad (8.23)$$

$$= \frac{1}{3} \chi_\parallel + \frac{2}{3} \chi_\perp. \quad (8.24)$$

The theoretical values of $\chi_\parallel$, $\chi_\perp$, and $\chi_p$ are shown in Fig. 8.12. At all temperatures, $\chi_\parallel$ is smaller than $\chi_\perp$, and so samples prefer to be oriented with their magnetic moments perpendicular to the applied magnetic field.

In fact, the shape of the $\chi$ versus $T$ curve also depends on the magnitude of the applied field. This is another consequence of the magnetic anisotropy; the
8.3 What causes the negative molecular field?

In Chapter 6 we saw that the origin of the Weiss molecular field is the quantum mechanical exchange integral, $J$. A positive exchange integral lowers the energy of parallel spins, relative to those which are aligned antiparallel. We understood this qualitatively by arguing that electrons with the same spin symmetry are prohibited (by the Pauli exclusion principle) from having the same spatial symmetry. Therefore they do not occupy the same region of space, and hence they have a lower Coulomb repulsion.

Based on this argument, we might expect that the antiferromagnetic state should always be unstable. For our simple example of the He atom, the exchange integral, $J$, can never be negative. However, in real materials there are usually more than two electrons! The stable state is the one which minimizes the total energy of the system, and can only be predicted if all the many-body interactions are included.

**Superexchange**

Next we will show how simple valence-bonding arguments predict antiferromagnetic ordering in some of the most common antiferromagnets – the magnetic oxides. We will use MnO as our example.
The bonding in MnO is largely ionic, with linear chains of Mn$^{2+}$ and O$^{2−}$ ions running through the crystal. Along each chain direction, the O$^{2−}$ ion has an occupied p orbital oriented along the Mn–O–Mn axis, as shown in Fig. 8.13. Each Mn$^{2+}$ ion contains five 3d electrons, which occupy the 3d orbitals with one electron per orbital and their spins parallel.

Next we make the assumption that it is energetically favorable for the valence electrons on the Mn$^{2+}$ and O$^{2−}$ ions to undergo some degree of covalent bonding. Since the O$^{2−}$ ion has a filled shell of electrons, hybridization can only take place by donation of electrons from the O$^{2−}$ ion into the vacant orbitals of the Mn$^{2+}$ ion. Let’s assume that our left-most Mn$^{2+}$ ion has up-spin, as shown in Fig. 8.14. Then, since all the Mn orbitals contain an up-spin electron already, covalent bonding can only occur if the neighboring oxygen donates its down-spin electron. This leaves an up-spin electron in the oxygen p orbital, which it is able to donate to the next Mn$^{2+}$ ion in the chain. By the same argument, bonding can only occur if the electrons on the next Mn$^{2+}$ ion are down-spin. We see that this oxygen-mediated interaction leads to an overall antiferromagnetic alignment between the Mn$^{2+}$ ions, without requiring negative exchange integrals.

Note that pairs of empty transition-metal d orbitals coupled by filled oxygen p states are also antiferromagnetic. In this case, the oxygen acts as a ligand, donating electron density into the empty transition-metal d state, and by Hund’s rules, the donated electron should have the same spin as the electrons occupying the filled transition-metal d states. This mechanism is shown in Fig. 8.15.
Antiferromagnetism in transition metals

In Chapter 6 we showed that simple band-theory arguments explain the presence of ferromagnetism in Fe, Ni, and Co, and its absence in Cu and Zn. We only told half the story, however. In fact Cr and Mn have complicated antiferromagnetic structures, and to understand this we need to look a little more deeply at their electronic structures.

In Chapter 5 we introduced the concept of the Fermi surface – that is, the surface showing the position of the Fermi level, $E_F$, in $k$-space. For free electrons the Fermi surface is a sphere, because $E_F = \hbar^2 / 2m_e k_F^2$. For transition metals, with both d and s bands intersecting the Fermi level, the Fermi surface is much more complicated. As an example, the Fermi surface of chromium, calculated in [39] using the linear combination of atomic orbitals method, is shown in Fig. 8.16. The figure shows that there are regions of the Fermi surface in which two rather flat surfaces are parallel to each other. When this occurs, an oscillatory spin density develops, with the wavenumber determined by the difference in wavenumber between the two surfaces. If this wavenumber is commensurate with the atomic spacing, we obtain antiferromagnetic ordering. For incommensurate wavenumbers, more complicated spin-wave ordering can result.
Figure 8.17 Magnetization of free electrons around a point magnetic moment placed at the origin, according to RKKY theory. The horizontal axis is $2k_F r$, where $k_F$ is the Fermi wavevector. The vertical axis is proportional to the magnetization induced by a point source at $r = 0$. From [21]. Copyright 1995 John Wiley & Sons. Reprinted with permission.

**RKKY theory**

In rare-earth metals, or in alloys of magnetic ions in a non-magnetic metallic host, the magnetic ions are too far apart to interact with each other directly. However, a long-range interaction can occur via the non-magnetic conduction electrons. Essentially, a magnetic ion polarizes its surrounding conduction electrons, which, because they are delocalized, transfer their polarization to a second, distant magnetic ion. The resulting interaction between the magnetic ions can be either ferro- or antiferromagnetic, depending on the distance between the ions. The interaction is known as the RKKY interaction (after Ruderman, Kittel, Kasuya, and Yosida [37–39]), and was first developed to explain the indirect exchange coupling of nuclear magnetic moments by conduction electrons. The RKKY magnetization of a free-electron Fermi gas at 0 K around a point magnetic moment is shown in Fig. 8.17.

### 8.4 Uses of antiferromagnets

Antiferromagnets do not have the wide applicability of ferromagnets because of their lack of spontaneous magnetization. They are, however, closely related...
8.4 Uses of antiferromagnets

Figure 8.18 Schematic of a core–shell particle consisting of a ferromagnetic Co core, with a surrounding shell of antiferromagnetic CoO.

Figure 8.19 Schematic hysteresis loop in a system with exchange anisotropy.

structurally to the spontaneously magnetized ferrimagnetic materials which we will study in the next chapter. Therefore they provide a somewhat simpler system in which to test the theoretical models which we will use to explain ferrimagnetism.

One area in which antiferromagnets recently found wide applicability is in so-called spin valves (described in Chapter 15), because of a phenomenon called exchange anisotropy or exchange-bias coupling. Exchange anisotropy was first observed over 50 years ago [40] in single-domain particles (100–1000 Å in diameter) of Co (which is ferromagnetic) coated with antiferromagnetic CoO, as shown in Fig. 8.18. Those Co/CoO samples, which were cooled in zero field, had normal hysteresis behavior, whereas field-cooled samples were observed to have a shifted hysteresis loop, as shown schematically in Fig. 8.19. Overall, the coercivity was increased compared with the zero field-cooled sample, and its magnitude was different for increasing and decreasing field. We will discuss current understanding of the origins and mechanism for exchange bias in Chapter 14.

The different coercivities for forward- and reverse-applied fields in exchange-biased systems are used in modern spin-valve applications to pin the direction of magnetization of a ferromagnetic layer. The pinned layer is coupled to a second

www.iran-mavad.com
ferromagnetic layer that can change its magnetization orientation in response to an
applied field. The resistance of the device is low if both ferromagnetic layers are
aligned in the same direction, and high if they are aligned in opposite directions.
Therefore the device can be used as a sensitive magnetic field sensor.

Additional applications for antiferromagnetic materials might emerge from the
huge current research effort aimed at exploiting materials which show a phase
transition from an antiferromagnetic to a ferromagnetic state, with corresponding
changes in structural and magnetic properties. Examples of such materials include
the so-called colossal magnetoresistive (or CMR) materials. The CMR materials are
perovskite-structure manganites in which the ferromagnetic to antiferromagnetic
transition is accompanied by a metal–insulator transition. As a result, they show a
large change in conductivity when a magnetic field is applied, leading to potential
applications as magnetic field sensors. We will discuss CMR materials and other
magnetoresistors in Chapter 13 of this book.

**Homework**

**Exercises**

8.1 Show that Eq. (8.17), describing the susceptibility when the field is applied parallel
to the magnetization direction, reduces to the Curie–Weiss expression (Eq. (8.9)) at
high temperatures, and to zero at 0 K.

8.2 Consider an antiferromagnetic material which has a susceptibility, $\chi_0$, at its Néel
temperature, $T_N$. Assuming that the exchange interactions between nearest-neighbor
$A$ and $B$ ions are much larger than those between $A–A$ and $B–B$ pairs, calculate the
values of the susceptibilities which would be measured under the application of fields
perpendicular to the magnetization direction at $T = 0$, $T = T_N/2$, and $T = 2T_N$.

**To think about**

We’ve seen that the superexchange mechanism leads to antiferromagnetism. Do you think
it is likely that ferromagnetic oxides exist? Think about what might happen if you had a
Mn$^{3+}$ ion (with four 3d electrons) separated from a Mn$^{4+}$ ion (with three 3d electrons) by
an oxygen ion. More about this in Section 13.3.

**Further reading**

and Sons, 2009, chapter 5.
Ferrimagnetism

To interpret the magnetic properties, I assumed that the predominant magnetic interactions were exerted between the ions placed at sites A and ions placed at sites B, and that they were essentially negative.


Finally we have reached the last chapter in our survey of the most important types of magnetic ordering. In this chapter we will discuss ferrimagnets. Ferrimagnets behave similarly to ferromagnets, in that they exhibit a spontaneous magnetization below some critical temperature, $T_c$, even in the absence of an applied field. However, as we see in Fig. 9.1, the form of a typical ferrimagnetic magnetization curve is distinctly different from the ferromagnetic curve.

In fact ferrimagnets are also related to *anti*ferromagnets, in that the exchange coupling between adjacent magnetic ions leads to antiparallel alignment of the localized moments. The overall magnetization occurs because the magnetization of one sublattice is greater than that of the oppositely oriented sublattice. A schematic of the ordering of magnetic moments in a ferrimagnet is shown in Fig. 9.2. We will see in the next section that the observed susceptibility and magnetization of ferrimagnets can be reproduced using the Weiss molecular field theory. In fact the localized-moment model applies rather well to ferrimagnetic materials, since most are ionic solids with largely localized electrons.

The fact that ferrimagnets are ionic solids means that they are electrically insulating, whereas most ferromagnets are metals. This results in a wide range of important applications for ferrimagnets, in situations requiring magnetic insulators. In Sections 9.2 and 9.3 we will review the properties of some of the most technologically relevant ferrimagnetic materials – the ferrites and the garnets. At the end of this chapter, we will discuss, just for fun, a new class of materials which has been predicted theoretically but has not yet been synthesized: the so-called...
Ferrimagnetism

Figure 9.1 Comparison of magnetization and inverse susceptibility in typical ferri- and ferromagnets.

Figure 9.2 Ordering of magnetic ions in a ferrimagnetic lattice.

half-metallic antiferromagnets, which are actually unusual ferrimagnets with zero net magnetization.

9.1 Weiss theory of ferrimagnetism

Néel developed the theory of ferrimagnetism in the same classic paper which contained his theory of antiferromagnetism [37]. The localized-moment picture for ferrimagnets is slightly more complicated than that for antiferromagnets. This time the A and B sublattices are not structurally identical, and we have to consider at
least three interactions to reproduce the experimentally observed behavior. These are the interactions between nearest-neighbor $A-B$ pairs, which tend to align the moments in the two sublattices antiparallel, plus the $A-A$ and $B-B$ interactions. Here $A$ and $B$ can represent either different atomic species or the same ion types on sites of different symmetry.

The simplest possible model which allows us to reproduce the features of ferrimagnetism must include interactions between $A-A$, $B-B$, and $A-B$ ion pairs. We will assume that the $A-B$ interaction drives the antiparallel alignment, and that both $A-A$ and $B-B$ interactions are ferromagnetic. In the following derivation, $n$ is the number of magnetic ions per unit volume, $\alpha$ is the fraction of $A$ ions, $\beta$ is the fraction of $B$ ions ($= 1 - \alpha$), $\mu_A$ is the average magnetic moment of an $A$ ion in the direction of the field at some temperature $T$, and $\mu_B$ is the average moment of a $B$ ion.

Then the magnetization of the $A$ sublattice is

$$M_A = \alpha n \mu_A,$$  

and the magnetization of the $B$ sublattice is

$$M_B = \beta n \mu_B.$$  

So the total magnetization is

$$M = M_A + M_B = \alpha n \mu_A + \beta n \mu_B.$$  

Again there are two Weiss molecular fields, one acting on each of the $A$ and $B$ sublattices, but they are no longer equal in magnitude. The molecular field on the $A$ sublattice is

$$H_W^A = -\gamma_{AB} M_B + \gamma_{AA} M_A.$$  

Similarly, the field acting on sublattice $B$ is given by

$$H_W^B = -\gamma_{AB} M_A + \gamma_{BB} M_B.$$  

The minus signs indicate a contribution to the molecular field which is opposite in direction to the corresponding magnetization.

### 9.1.1 Weiss theory above $T_C$

To apply the Weiss theory above the Curie temperature, we assume Curie-law behavior for each sublattice. (This method should now be very familiar!) That is, $\chi = M/H_{\text{tot}} = C/T$, so $M = H_{\text{tot}} C/T$, where $H_{\text{tot}}$ is the total field, which is the

www.iran-mavad.com

مرجع مهندسي مواد و مطالعه
sum of the applied field and the Weiss field. Then, for sublattice $A$,

$$M_A = \frac{C(H + H^A_W)}{T},$$

(9.6)

and for sublattice $B$,

$$M_B = \frac{C(H + H^B_W)}{T}.$$

(9.7)

Here $H$ is the external applied field.

Solving for $M = M_A + M_B$, and dividing by the field to obtain the susceptibility, gives

$$\frac{1}{\chi} = \frac{T + C/\chi_0}{C} - \frac{b}{T - \theta}.$$

(9.8)

Here

$$\frac{1}{\chi_0} = \gamma_{AB} \left( 2\alpha\beta - \frac{\gamma_{AA}}{\gamma_{AB}}\alpha^2 - \frac{\gamma_{BB}}{\gamma_{AB}}\beta^2 \right),$$

(9.9)

$$b = \gamma_{AB}^2 C\alpha\beta \left[ \alpha \left( 1 + \frac{\gamma_{AA}}{\gamma_{AB}} \right) - \beta \left( 1 + \frac{\gamma_{BB}}{\gamma_{AB}} \right) \right]^2,$$

(9.10)

and

$$\theta = \gamma_{AB} C\alpha\beta \left( 2 + \frac{\gamma_{AA}}{\gamma_{AB}} + \frac{\gamma_{BB}}{\gamma_{AB}} \right).$$

(9.11)

The curve described by Eq. (9.8) is plotted in Fig. 9.3. It is a hyperbola, and intersects the temperature axis at the so-called paramagnetic Curie point, $\theta_p$. At high temperatures the second term in the expression for $\frac{1}{\chi}$ becomes small, and Eq. (9.8) reduces to a Curie–Weiss law:

$$\chi = \frac{C}{T + (C/\chi_0)}.$$

(9.12)

This Curie–Weiss equation is plotted as the dashed line in Fig. 9.3.

The Curie–Weiss prediction gives good agreement with experiment, except in the immediate vicinity of the Curie point. Figure 9.4 shows the measured reciprocal susceptibility of magnesium ferrite [41] compared with the theoretical prediction obtained using values of the constants given by Néel [37]. The intersection of the experimental curve with the temperature axis is called the ferromagnetic Curie temperature, $\theta_f$. This is the temperature at which the susceptibility diverges and spontaneous magnetization appears. The experimental $\theta_f$ differs slightly from the predicted $\theta_p$ because of short-range magnetic order, which persists for a few degrees even above $T_C$. 

www.iran-mavad.com

مرجع مهندسی مواد و مالورژی
9.1 Weiss theory of ferrimagnetism

Below the Curie temperature, each sublattice is spontaneously magnetized, and there is a net observable magnetization,

\[ M = |M_A| - |M_B|. \]  

(9.13)
Ferrimagnetism

Each sublattice follows the familiar Brillouin function magnetization curve, so (just as for ferromagnets)

\[ M_A = Nm_A B \left( J, \frac{m_A H_A^A}{k_B T} \right) \]  
(9.14)

and

\[ M_B = Nm_B B \left( J, \frac{m_B H_B^B}{k_B T} \right) \].  
(9.15)

Here \( m_A \) and \( m_B \) are the magnetic moments along the field direction on the A and B ions, respectively. Substituting for \( H_A^A \) and \( H_B^B \),

\[ M_A = Nm_A B \left( J, \frac{m_A [\gamma_{AA} M_A - \gamma_{AB} M_B]}{k_B T} \right) \]  
(9.16)

and

\[ M_B = Nm_B B \left( J, \frac{m_B [\gamma_{BB} M_B - \gamma_{AB} M_A]}{k_B T} \right) \].  
(9.17)

These equations are not independent – the magnetization of the A sublattice depends on the magnetization of the B sublattice, and vice versa. Therefore the simple graphical method of solution which we used for antiferromagnetic materials cannot be used here, and the equations must be solved numerically.

The resulting spontaneous magnetization curves for typical values of \( \gamma_{AB}, \gamma_{AA}, \) and \( \gamma_{BB} \) are shown in Fig. 9.5. Note that both sublattices must have the same Curie point, otherwise at some temperature one of the lattices would have zero moment, and so would not be able to align the moments on the other sublattice.

Because the shapes of the spontaneous magnetization curves for each sublattice depend on the values of all the molecular field constants, and on the distribution of A- and B-type ions, the net magnetization does not necessarily vary monotonically with temperature. We’ve already seen one example in Fig. 9.5, where the magnitude of the A sublattice magnetization decreases less rapidly with increasing temperature than the magnitude of the B sublattice magnetization. As a result, the net spontaneous magnetization increases with increasing temperature, and goes through a maximum before falling to zero at \( T_C \). Such behavior is displayed, for example, by the cubic spinel NiO-Cr2O3. Figure 9.6 shows a different case – here the spontaneous magnetization decreases to zero before the Curie temperature is reached, and then the material develops a spontaneous magnetization in the opposite direction. At one temperature, called the compensation point, the magnetizations of the two sublattices are exactly balanced and the net magnetization is zero.
9.1 Weiss theory of ferrimagnetism

The compound Li$_{0.5}$Fe$_{1.25}$Cr$_{1.25}$O$_4$ is an example of a material which shows this behavior.

If a material contains more than two sublattices, then an even more complicated temperature dependence of the magnetization, including more than one compensation point, can occur. One example which has been synthesized recently [42, 43] is (Ni$_{0.22}$Mn$_{0.60}$Fe$_{0.18}$)$_3$[Cr(CN)$_6$], a Prussian-blue structure phase in which the transition-metal cations form a face-centered cubic array linked by cyanide anions. This material is ferrimagnetic, with a Curie temperature of 63 K, and exhibits two magnetization reversals, at 53 K and 35 K, as shown in Fig. 9.7. The properties are well described by a three-component Weiss molecular field theory.
Figure 9.7 Experimental magnetization curves for \((\text{Ni}_{0.22}\text{Mn}_{0.60}\text{Fe}_{0.18})_3\text{[Cr(CN)}_6]\). The filled circles show the field-cooled magnetization obtained with decreasing temperature in an external magnetic field of 10 G; the open circles show the remanent magnetization obtained with increasing temperature after the temperature was first lowered in the applied magnetic field of 10 G. From [43]. Copyright 1999 the American Physical Society. Reproduced with permission.

9.2 Ferrites

The most technologically important ferrimagnets are the materials known as ferrites. Ferrites are ferrimagnetic transition-metal oxides, and are electrically insulating. As a result they find applications in situations where the electrical conductivity shown by most ferromagnetic materials would be detrimental. For example, they are widely used in high-frequency applications, because an ac field does not induce undesirable eddy currents in an insulating material.

Ferrites are usually manufactured using ceramic processing techniques. For example, to produce \(\text{NiO}\cdot\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3\), powdered \(\text{NiO}\) and \(\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3\) are mixed together, pressed into shape, and heated. This method has the advantage of allowing easy control of the shape of the magnet by the choice of the mold.

There are two common types of ferrites with different structural symmetries – the cubic ferrites and the hexagonal ferrites.

9.2.1 The cubic ferrites

The cubic ferrites have the general formula \(\text{MO}\cdot\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3\), where \(\text{M}\) is a divalent ion such as \(\text{Mn}^{2+}\), \(\text{Ni}^{2+}\), \(\text{Fe}^{2+}\), \(\text{Co}^{2+}\), or \(\text{Mg}^{2+}\). The earliest technologically useful magnetic material, magnetite, is a cubic ferrite. Magnetite has the formula \(\text{FeO}\cdot\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3\),
and is the magnetic mineral contained in lodestone, from which the first compasses for navigation were made.

Cubic ferrites crystallize in the spinel structure (named after the mineral spinel, \(\text{MgO} \cdot \text{Al}_2\text{O}_3\)). The oxygen anions are packed in a face-centered cubic arrangement such that there are two kinds of spaces between the anions – tetrahedrally coordinated \((A)\) sites, and octahedrally coordinated \((B)\) sites. The cations occupy the spaces, although only \(\frac{1}{8}\) of the tetrahedral spaces and \(\frac{1}{2}\) of the octahedral spaces are occupied. A picture of the spinel structure is shown in Fig. 9.8.

In the *normal* spinel-structure ferrites, the divalent \(M^{2+}\) ions are all on \(A\) sites and the \(\text{Fe}^{3+}\) ions occupy octahedral \(B\) sites. Examples of such ferrites include \(\text{ZnO} \cdot \text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3\) and \(\text{CdO} \cdot \text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3\). The dominant interaction determining the magnetic ordering in ferrites is an antiferromagnetic interaction between \(A\) and \(B\) site cations; however, since \(\text{Zn}^{2+}\) and \(\text{Cd}^{2+}\) do not have magnetic moments to mediate magnetic interactions, the net \(\text{Fe}^{3+} - \text{Fe}^{3+}\) interaction in these materials is very weak, and they are paramagnetic. In the *inverse* spinels, the \(\text{Fe}^{3+}\) ions are divided equally between \(A\) and \(B\) sites, with the divalent ions (previously on the \(A\) sites) displaced to the remaining \(B\) sites; examples include Fe-, Co-, and Ni ferrite, all of which are ferrimagnetic. Again the dominant interaction determining the magnetic ordering is the antiferromagnetic \(A - B\) interaction. As a result, the spin moments of all the \(\text{Fe}^{3+}\) ions on the octahedral sites are aligned parallel to one another, but directed oppositely to the spin moments of the \(\text{Fe}^{3+}\) ions occupying the tetrahedral positions. Therefore the magnetic moments of all \(\text{Fe}^{3+}\) ions cancel and make no net contribution to the magnetization of the solid. However, all the divalent ions have their moments aligned parallel to one another, and it is this total moment which is responsible for the net magnetization. Thus the saturation magnetization of a
Ferrimagnetism solid can be calculated from the product of the net spin magnetic moment of each divalent cation and the concentration of divalent cations.

Magnetization curves for a range of cubic ferrites are shown in Fig. 9.9. It is clear that the saturation magnetization and the Curie temperature vary markedly between different compounds. In addition, solid solutions of mixed ferrites can be formed readily, allowing the values of these properties to be tuned precisely for specific applications.

The cubic ferrites are magnetically soft, and so are easily magnetized and demagnetized. Combined with their high permeability and saturation magnetization, and low electrical conductivity, this makes them particularly appropriate as cores for induction coils operating at high frequencies. Their high permeability concentrates flux density inside the coil and enhances the inductance, and their high electrical resistivity reduces the formation of undesirable eddy currents.

A history lesson – ferrite-core memories

Before the widespread adoption of transistor-based random-access memory in computers, memories composed of ferrite cores connected by a network of wires were used. The production of ferrite cores was an important industry – in 1968 alone, more than 15 billion were produced. A schematic of such a ferrite core memory is shown in Fig. 9.10, where the gray rectangular blobs are the ferrite cores, and the black lines are wires connecting them. Each core can be used to store...
a single bit of information, because it has two stable magnetic states, corresponding to opposite alignments of the remanent flux densities. To switch a core at a particular intersection requires the coincidence of two currents, neither of which is sufficient to exceed the threshold of the core’s hysteresis loop on its own.

The most important feature of ferrites which made them suitable for memory applications is their square-shaped hysteresis loops. The origin of the square shape is the large magnetocrystalline anisotropy, which we will discuss in detail in the next chapter. A typical ferrite hysteresis loop is shown in Fig. 9.11. The advantages
of the square hysteresis loop are that the remanent magnetization is close to the saturation magnetization, and that a well-defined applied field slightly greater than the coercive field will switch the magnetization direction.

Other desirable characteristics are fast switching times $\tau$, minimal temperature variation (and therefore a high $T_C$), mechanical strength (allowing small cores to be produced), and low magnetostriction. A widely used material was $\text{Mg}_{0.45}\text{Mn}_{0.55}\text{Mn}_{0.23}\text{Fe}_{1.77}\text{O}_4$, which has the characteristics shown in Table 9.1.

### Table 9.1 Important characteristics of $\text{Mg}_{0.45}\text{Mn}_{0.55}\text{Mn}_{0.23}\text{Fe}_{1.77}\text{O}_4$.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coercivity</td>
<td>$H_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residual induction</td>
<td>$B_r$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturation induction</td>
<td>$B_s$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curie temperature</td>
<td>$T_C$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching time</td>
<td>$\tau$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.2.2 The hexagonal ferrites

The most important of the hexagonal ferrites is barium ferrite, $\text{BaO}\cdot6\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$. Barium ferrite crystallizes in the hexagonal magnetoplumbite structure (Fig. 9.12). The magnetoplumbite structure contains 10 oxygen layers in its elementary unit cell, and is constructed from four building blocks, labeled $S$, $S^*$, $R$, and $R^*$ in the figure. The $S$ and $S^*$ blocks are spinels with two oxygen layers and six $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ ions. Four of the $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ ions are in octahedral sites and have their spins aligned parallel to each other (say up-spin), and the other two are in tetrahedral sites, with the opposite spin direction to the octahedral iron ions. The $S$ and $S^*$ blocks are equivalent but rotated 180° with respect to each other. The $R$ and $R^*$ blocks consist of three oxygen layers, with one of the oxygen anions in the middle layer replaced by a barium ion. Each $R$ block contains six $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ ions, five of which are in octahedral sites with three up-spin and two down-spin, and one of which is coordinated by five $\text{O}^{2-}$ anions and has up-spin. The net magnetic moment per unit cell is $20\mu_B$.

Hexagonal ferrites are used widely as permanent magnets. They are magnetically hard (unlike the cubic ferrites which are magnetically soft), with typical coerciviities of around 200 kA/m. Like the cubic ferrites, they are cheap to produce by ceramic processing methods, and can be powderied and formed easily into any required shape.
The garnets have the chemical formula $3\text{M}_2\text{O}_3\cdot\text{5Fe}_2\text{O}_3$, where M is yttrium or one of the smaller rare earths towards the right-hand side of the lanthanide series (Gd to Lu). All cations in garnets are trivalent, in contrast to the ferrites, which contain some divalent and some trivalent cations. Since all of the cations have the same valence, the likelihood of electrons hopping through the material, say from $2+$ ions (leaving them $3+$) to $3+$ ions (making them $2+$) is very low, and so the resistivity of garnets is extremely high. Therefore they are used in very high frequency (microwave) applications, where even the ferrites would be too conductive.

The garnets are rather weakly ferrimagnetic. As an example, in yttrium–iron garnet, the yttrium does not have a magnetic moment (since it does not have any f electrons), so the net moment is due entirely to the unequal distribution of Fe$^{3+}$ ions in up- and down-spin sites. The antiferromagnetic superexchange interaction results in three up-spin electrons for every two down-spin electrons, and a net magnetic moment of $5\mu_B$ per formula unit. Since the formula unit is very large, this leads to a small magnetization per unit volume. In the rare-earth garnets, the magnetic moment of the R$^{3+}$ ion also contributes, and this leads to a compensation point in the magnetization curve.
Since the rare earths readily substitute for one another, and Fe\(^{3+}\) can be easily replaced by Al\(^{3+}\) or Ga\(^{3+}\), it is possible to tune the compensation point, saturation magnetization, anisotropy, and lattice constant for specific applications.

### 9.4 Half-metallic antiferromagnets

Half-metallic antiferromagnets are a class of materials which have been predicted theoretically \([44, 45]\) but not yet synthesized. We include them here in part for some light entertainment, but also to illustrate that there is still great potential in the search for new magnetic materials with novel and possibly technologically relevant properties.

Half-metallic materials are defined as those which are insulating for one spin direction (down-spin, say) but metallic for the other spin channel (up-spin). As such, the Fermi energy is in the band gap for the down-spin electrons, but is in a region of finite density of states for up-spin electrons. A consequence of the half-metallicity is that the spin magnetization is always an integer number of Bohr magnetons per unit cell. In a half-metallic antiferromagnet this integer is zero, so that there is no net magnetization. Half-metallic antiferromagnets are really ferrimagnets in which the magnetizations of the two different sublattices exactly cancel out.

The properties of half-metallic antiferromagnets are unusual. First, they are non-magnetic metals in which electric current, carried by electrons near the Fermi level, is fully spin-polarized! However, since there is no net internal magnetization, half-metallic antiferromagnets do not generate a magnetic field, in spite of their fully magnetized currents. This is a particularly desirable property, for example in spin-polarized scanning tunneling microscopy, which allows one to obtain an atomic-scale map of spin-resolved information. Currently such experiments are complicated by the existence of a permanent magnetic tip (required to produce the spin-polarized electrons) close to the magnetic surface being investigated. Also a novel form of superconductivity has been proposed.

The most promising candidate materials for half-metallic antiferromagnetism have the double perovskite structure shown in Fig. 9.13. An example which has been shown computationally to have the required band structure is La\(_2\)VMnO\(_6\). Here the Mn\(^{3+}\) ion has a low spin d\(^4\) configuration, resulting in a net magnetic moment of 2\(\mu_B\), and the V\(^{3+}\) ion is d\(^2\) and so also has a moment of 2\(\mu_B\). The most stable state is predicted to have the V\(^{3+}\) and Mn\(^{3+}\) sublattices aligned antiferromagnetically. It remains an open research challenge to realize half-metallic antiferromagnets experimentally.
Figure 9.13 Schematic of the double perovskite crystal structure. The black and white spheres are transition-metal ions (Mn\(^{3+}\) and V\(^{3+}\) in our example), surrounded by octahedra of gray oxygen anions, and the La\(^{3+}\) cations (not shown) lie between the octahedra. The octahedra around different transition-metal cations can be different sizes. From [45]. Copyright 1998 the American Physical Society. Reproduced with permission.

**Homework**

**Exercises**

9.1 Review question 1

(a) Outline the major similarities and differences between ferromagnetic and ferrimagnetic materials.

(b) The approximate values of spontaneous magnetization \(M\) (normalized by dividing by the saturation magnetization, \(M_s\)) for magnetite, Fe\(_3\)O\(_4\), as a function of \(T/T_C\) were measured by Weiss [23], and are given in the table below:

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccccc}
M/M_s & 0.92 & 0.88 & 0.83 & 0.77 & 0.68 & 0.58 & 0.43 & 0.32 & 0.22 & 0.03 \\
T/T_C & 0.23 & 0.33 & 0.43 & 0.54 & 0.66 & 0.78 & 0.89 & 0.94 & 0.95 & 0.98 \\
\end{array}
\]

Plot these values, and compare your graph with the curve derived from the Langevin–Weiss theory of ferromagnetism shown in Fig. 6.3. Comment!
(c) Calculate the saturation magnetization for magnetite (Fe₃O₄), given that each cubic unit cell contains 8 Fe²⁺ and 16 Fe³⁺ ions, and that the unit cell edge length is 0.839 nm. For the ferrites, it’s safe to assume that the orbital angular momentum is quenched. Also, remember that the magnetization will be measured along the direction of applied field, so when you calculate the magnetic moment per atom, it’s the magnetic moment along the field direction that you are interested in.

(d) Design a cubic mixed-ferrite material that has a saturation magnetization of 5.25 × 10⁵ A/m. (Assume that substituting an iron ion with another ion from the first-row transition elements does not change the lattice constant significantly.) What is the saturation flux density of your material? Give your answer (i) in SI units and (ii) in cgs units.

(e) Outline the major similarities and differences between antiferromagnetic and ferrimagnetic materials.

(f) Explain how the superexchange interaction leads to antiferromagnetic coupling between the magnetic ions in ferrimagnetic materials. How would you expect the strength of the superexchange interaction to vary if the cation–oxygen–cation bond angle were increased or decreased from 180°?

9.2 Review question 2

Cubic nickel ferrite has the chemical formula NiO·Fe₂O₃. The structure consists of close-packed planes of oxygen anions, with the nickel ions occupying tetrahedral sites and the iron ions evenly distributed between octahedral and tetrahedral sites. Each unit cell contains eight formula units.

(a) What are the charges and electronic structures of the nickel and iron ions?

(b) Cations occupying tetrahedral sites have the opposite spin direction to cations occupying octahedral sites. Explain in a few words why this occurs. What is the name of the theory that you have described? As a result of this ferrimagnetic ordering, what net magnetic moment do the iron ions contribute?

(c) The unit cell edge length of nickel ferrite is 8.34 Å. What is the saturation magnetization of nickel ferrite?

(d) Hall-effect measurements on metallic, elemental nickel indicate that the number of free electrons per atom of Ni is 0.54. Based on your result, how many d electrons per atom are there in metallic Ni? (HINT: Remember that only the s electrons are free and contribute to the conductivity. All the remaining valence electrons must therefore be d electrons.)

(e) In ferromagnetic metals, the d-electron band splits into a lower-energy band which is occupied by the up-spin electrons, and a higher-energy band for the down-spin electrons. Only the d electrons contribute to the magnetic moment, and the magnitude of the magnetic moment is determined by the difference between the numbers of up- and down-spin electrons. In Ni, all five of the up-spin d bands are filled. (i) How many down-spin d bands are filled? Sketch the
density of states of ferromagnetic Ni. (ii) What is the magnitude of the magnetic moment per atom of Ni?

(f) Elemental Ni crystallizes in the fcc structure with a cubic unit cell edge length of 3.52 Å. How many atoms are there per unit cell? What is the magnetic moment per unit cell? What is the saturation magnetization of elemental Ni?

(g) Compare your calculated saturation magnetizations for nickel ferrite and nickel. Comment on possible applications for both materials.
10
Summary of basics

We’ve now worked our way through all of the most important types of magnetic ordering, and discussed the microscopic arrangements of the magnetic moments and the physics and chemistry that determine them. We’ve also described the resulting macroscopic behavior in each case. Before we move on, let’s summarize the basics that we have learned so far.

10.1 Review of types of magnetic ordering

Remember that we have covered four main classes of magnetic materials: the para-, antiferro-, ferro-, and ferrimagnets. In Fig. 10.1 we reproduce the local ordering and magnetization curves, which we first introduced in Chapter 2, for each of the classes. Let’s summarize their properties:

Paramagnets. The individual atoms or ions have magnetic moments, but these moments are disordered, so that there is no net magnetization. The susceptibility is positive, because the external field causes the moments to partially align with it; and it is small, because the thermal energy which tends to disorder the moments is large compared with the magnetic energy that tends to align them along the field direction.

Antiferromagnets. Here the magnetic moments on the individual atoms or ions align in an antiparallel fashion so as, overall, to cancel each other out. As in the case of the paramagnets, there is no net zero-field magnetization and a small positive susceptibility; note that the microscopic structure is very different, however.

Ferromagnets. In the ferromagnets the moments align parallel to each other, yielding a large net magnetization. The susceptibility can be very large and is often hysteretic because the magnetization process proceeds via domain-wall motion.

Ferrimagnets. The ferrimagnets are microscopically similar to the antiferromagnets, in that they consist of two sublattices within which the moments are aligned parallel, with the two sublattices aligned antiparallel to each other. However, the magnitudes of the magnetic
moments in the two sublattices are different, so that there is a net magnetization. As a result they behave *macroscopically* like the ferromagnets, with large positive susceptibility and hysteresis.

**10.2 Review of physics determining types of magnetic ordering**

We’ve also discussed the fundamental origins of the different types of magnetic ordering; conversely, this has allowed us to develop some intuition regarding the type of magnetic behavior we should expect in various materials. Here we remind ourselves of the physics and chemistry that drives magnetic moments to adopt particular orderings. We group the behaviors by phenomenon rather than by ordering type.

*Exchange.* The quantum mechanical exchange energy, $J$, between two electrons is formally defined as twice the energy difference between their symmetric and antisymmetric two-body wavefunctions. We showed in Chapter 6 that it is given by

$$J = \langle \phi_1(\mathbf{r}_1)\phi_2(\mathbf{r}_2)| H_{12} |\phi_2(\mathbf{r}_1)\phi_1(\mathbf{r}_2) \rangle,$$

where $\mathbf{r}_1$ and $\mathbf{r}_2$ describe the positions of the two electrons, each of which may occupy orbitals $\phi_1$ or $\phi_2$. When $J$ is positive, which is always the case when the
electron–electron interaction is the usual Coulomb repulsion, the exchange energy favors electrons with parallel spins and causes ferromagnetism.

**Superexchange.** Superexchange is the interaction between neighboring magnetic cations that is mediated by chemical bonding through an intermediate anion (often oxygen). It results from partial covalent bond formation between the electrons on the magnetic ions and those on the anions: Since bond formation is an energy-lowering process, and can only occur between electrons of particular spin orientations, those relative orientations of the magnetic ions that permit bonding are favored. We showed in Chapter 8 that this usually results in antiferromagnetic coupling between the magnetic ions; later we will show examples where it can also drive ferromagnetic interactions.

**RKKY.** The RKKY interaction describes the interaction between a localized magnetic moment and an electron gas, through their mutual exchange. The coupling of the electron gas to other localized moments in the system can then yield an effective interaction between the local moments. The sign of the coupling is oscillatory, and can cause either ferro- or antiferromagnetism, depending on the spacing between the local moments and the density of carriers in the electron gas.

**Spin density waves.** Spin density waves can occur in materials with Fermi surfaces containing parallel boundaries between electron and hole pockets. If the parallel boundaries are separated by a nesting vector, $q$, a spin density wave of wavelength $2\pi/q$ will tend to form, since it opens a gap at the Fermi surface and lowers the energy of the system. The classic example is Cr, which as a result has no net magnetization, in spite of its being a transition metal with a high density of 3d states at the Fermi energy.

**Double exchange.** Double exchange is another important interaction that we haven’t discussed yet, but we mention it here for completeness. (We’ll describe it in detail when we reach the section on transition-metal oxides.) It occurs in mixed-valent materials, in which delocalization of electrons from high- to low-valent ions is energetically favorable since it lowers the kinetic energy of the system. Hund’s rule can only be satisfied on both ions, however, if they are aligned in the same orientation. Like RKKY, double exchange is a carrier-mediated exchange interaction, although in the double-exchange case the interactions between the magnetic moments are always ferromagnetic.

Now we are ready to go on and examine how these magnetic orderings manifest themselves in a range of magnetic phenomena; this is the topic of Part II of this book.
Part II

Magnetic phenomena
11
Anisotropy

... could it work so much upon your shape
As it hath much prevail’d on your condition,
I should not know you, Brutus.

William Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*

The term “magnetic anisotropy” refers to the dependence of the magnetic properties on the direction in which they are measured. The magnitude and type of magnetic anisotropy affect properties such as magnetization and hysteresis curves in magnetic materials. As a result the nature of the magnetic anisotropy is an important factor in determining the suitability of a magnetic material for a particular application. The anisotropy can be intrinsic to the material, as a result of its crystal chemistry or its shape, or it can be induced by careful choice of processing method. In this chapter we will discuss both intrinsic and induced anisotropies in some detail.

11.1 Magnetocrystalline anisotropy

In Chapter 7 we introduced the concept of magnetocrystalline anisotropy, which is the tendency of the magnetization to align itself along a preferred crystallographic direction. We also defined the magnetocrystalline anisotropy energy to be the energy difference per unit volume between samples magnetized along easy and hard directions. The magnetocrystalline anisotropy energy can be observed by cutting a \{110\} disk from a single crystal of material as shown in Fig. 11.1, and measuring the $M-H$ curves along the three high-symmetry crystallographic directions ([110], [111], and [001]) contained within the disk.

Schematic results for single-crystal samples of ferromagnetic metals such as iron and nickel were shown in Fig. 7.4. Body-centered cubic Fe has the $\langle100\rangle$ direction as its easy axis. In Ni, which is face-centered cubic, the easy axis is $\langle111\rangle$. Note
that the final value of the saturation magnetization is the same no matter which axis it is applied along, provided that the field is large enough, but the field required to reach the saturation value is distinctly different in each case.

### 11.1.1 Origin of magnetocrystalline anisotropy

The energy required to rotate the spin system of a domain away from the easy direction is actually just the energy required to overcome the spin–orbit coupling. When an applied field tries to reorient the direction of the electron spin, the orbital also needs to be reoriented, because of the coupling between the spin and orbital components. However, the orbital is in general also strongly coupled to the lattice, and so the attempt to rotate the spin axis is resisted. This is illustrated schematically in Fig. 11.2. Part (a) shows the magnetic moments aligned along the easy (vertical) axis, with the orbital components, which are not spherical because of the spin–orbit coupling, aligned with their long axes along the horizontal axis. For this particular crystal this orbital arrangement is energetically favorable. Part (b) shows the result of forcing the magnetic spins to align along the horizontal axis by applying an external magnetic field. The orbital components no longer have favorable overlap with each other or with the lattice.

In most materials the spin–orbit coupling is fairly weak, and so the magnetocrystalline anisotropy is not particularly strong. In rare-earth materials, however, the spin–orbit coupling is strong because rare-earth elements are heavy. Once magnetized, a large field must be applied in the direction opposite to the magnetization in order to overcome the anisotropy and reverse the magnetization. Therefore, rare-earth materials are often used in applications such as permanent magnets, where a large coercive field is required.
11.1 Magnetocrystalline anisotropy

Schematic magnetization curves for terbium, Tb, which is hexagonal, with the easy magnetization axis in the c plane, are shown in Fig. 11.3. When the field is applied perpendicular to the easy axis, only around 80% of the spontaneous magnetization is obtained, even at fields as large as 400 kOe. This is because the strong magnetocrystalline anisotropy resists rotation of the magnetization out of the easy axis. Hysteresis is observed, in spite of the magnetization occurring by what should be reversible rotation of the magnetization, because the strong spin–orbit coupling also leads to a large magnetostriction. This magnetostriction forms mechanical twins along the direction of magnetization, and the twin boundaries must be reoriented before the magnetization can relax.

Terbium has eight electrons in its unfilled 4f shell, and so its total orbital quantum number \( L = 3 \). Its neighbor gadolinium, Gd, has seven 4f electrons and therefore \( L = 0 \). As a result, Gd has no spin–orbit coupling and it exhibits no magnetocrystalline anisotropy.
Anisotropy

11.1.2 Symmetry of magnetocrystalline anisotropy

The symmetry of the magnetocrystalline anisotropy is always the same as that of the crystal structure. As a result, in iron, which is cubic, the anisotropy energy, $E$, can be written as a series expansion of the direction cosines, $\alpha_i$, of the saturation magnetization relative to the crystal axes:

$$E = K_1 (\alpha_1^2 \alpha_2^2 + \alpha_2^2 \alpha_3^2 + \alpha_3^2 \alpha_1^2) + K_2 (\alpha_1^2 \alpha_2^2 \alpha_3^2) + \cdots. \quad (11.1)$$

Here $K_1$, $K_2$, etc. are called the anisotropy constants. Typical values for iron at room temperature are $K_1 = 4.2 \times 10^5$ erg/cm$^3$ and $K_2 = 1.5 \times 10^5$ erg/cm$^3$. The energy, $E$, is that stored in the crystal when work is done against the anisotropy “force” to move the magnetization away from an easy direction. Note that the anisotropy energy is an even function of the direction cosines, and is invariant under interchange of the $\alpha_i$s among themselves.

Cobalt is hexagonal, with the easy axis along the hexagonal ($c$) axis. The symmetry causes a uniaxial anisotropy energy, and its angular dependence is a function only of the angle $\theta$ between the magnetization vector and the hexagonal axis (see Fig. 11.4).

In this case the anisotropy energy can be expanded as

$$E = K_1 \sin^2 \theta + K_2 \sin^4 \theta + \cdots. \quad (11.2)$$

Typical values of the anisotropy constants for cobalt at room temperature are $K_1 = 4.1 \times 10^6$ erg/cm$^3$ and $K_2 = 1.0 \times 10^6$ erg/cm$^3$. Note that, in all materials, the anisotropy decreases with increasing temperature, and near $T_C$ it tends to zero since there is no preferred orientation for magnetization in the paramagnetic state.
11.2 Shape anisotropy

Although most materials show some magnetocrystalline anisotropy, a polycrystalline sample with no preferred orientation of its grains will have no overall crystalline anisotropy. However, only if the sample is exactly spherical will the same field magnetize it to the same extent in every direction. If the sample is not spherical, then it will be easier to magnetize it along a long axis. This phenomenon is known as shape anisotropy. Figure 11.5 shows the shape anisotropy constant as a function of the $c/a$ ratio for a prolate spheroid of polycrystalline Co. Note that the anisotropy constant increases as the axial ratio increases, and that the shape anisotropy constant for typical axial ratios is of the same order of magnitude (around $10^6$ ergs/cm$^3$) as the magnetocrystalline anisotropy constant.

In order to understand the origin of shape anisotropy, we first need to introduce the concept of the demagnetizing field.

11.2.1 Demagnetizing field

The concept of a demagnetizing field is confusing, and we will introduce it in a rather qualitative way from the viewpoint of magnetic poles. Let’s suppose that our prolate spheroid from Fig. 11.5 has been magnetized by a magnetic field applied from right to left. This results in a north pole at the left end of the prolate spheroid and a south pole at the right end. By definition, the lines of $\mathbf{H}$ radiate from the north pole and end at the south pole, resulting in the pattern of field lines shown in the diagram.
in Fig. 11.6. We see from the figure that the field inside the sample points from left to right – that is, in the opposite direction to the applied external field! This internal field tends to demagnetize the magnet, and so we call it the demagnetizing field, \( H_d \).

The demagnetizing field is created by the magnetization of the sample, and in fact the size of the demagnetizing field is directly proportional to the size of the magnetization. We write

\[
H_d = N_d M, 
\]

where \( N_d \) is called the demagnetizing factor, and is determined by the shape of the sample. Although we won’t go into the details here, \( N_d \) can be calculated for different shapes (for details, see [38]). The results of the calculations indicate that, for elongated samples, \( N_d \) is smallest along the long axis and largest along the short axis. The anisotropy becomes stronger as the aspect ratio increases, with \( N_d \to 0 \) as the distance between the “poles” \( \to \infty \).

Moreover, the effective field acting inside the material, \( H_{\text{eff}} \), is smaller than the applied field by an amount equal to the demagnetizing field, i.e.

\[
H_{\text{eff}} = H_{\text{applied}} - H_d. 
\]

(11.4)

So along the long axis, where \( N_d \) is small,

\[
H_{\text{eff}} = H_{\text{applied}} - N_d M \simeq H_{\text{applied}},
\]

(11.5)

and most of the applied field goes into magnetizing the sample. By contrast, along the short axis \( N_d \) is large, so

\[
H_{\text{eff}} = H_{\text{applied}} - N_d M \ll H_{\text{applied}},
\]

(11.6)

and so most of the applied field goes into overcoming the demagnetizing field. As a consequence it is easier to magnetize the sample along the long axis. This uniaxial
magnetic response of needle-shaped particles leads to their widespread use as the media in magnetic recording systems. We will discuss this application in detail in Chapter 15.

Demagnetizing factors can be very important, and a high field is required to magnetize a sample with a large demagnetizing factor, even if the material has a large susceptibility. As an example, consider a sphere of permalloy, which is a Ni–Fe alloy with a coercive field \( H_c = 2 \text{ A/m} \), and saturation magnetization \( M_s = 1.16 \text{ T} \). For a sphere, \( N_d = \frac{1}{3} \) in every direction; therefore the demagnetizing field \( H_d = N_d M \mu_0 \) (in SI units) has the value \( 3.08 \times 10^5 \text{ A/m} \). So to saturate the magnetization of the sphere we actually need to apply a field which is \( 10^5 \) times that of the coercive field!

Note that published magnetization curves are often corrected for demagnetizing effects, so that they represent the intrinsic properties of the sample independently of its shape.

11.3 Induced magnetic anisotropy

As its name suggests, induced magnetic anisotropy is not intrinsic to a material, but is produced by a treatment (such as annealing) which has directional characteristics. There is a huge potential for engineering the magnetic properties using such treatments because both the magnitude of the anisotropy and the easy axis can be altered by appropriate treatments.

Most materials in which magnetic anisotropy can be induced are polycrystalline alloys. By definition, if the grains in a polycrystalline material have a preferred orientation (which we call a “texture”) then there will be anisotropy. Preferred orientations are determined in part by the laws of physics (which we can’t change), but also by the sample preparation. So some control over the degree and direction of preferred orientation is usually possible, using techniques such as casting, rolling, or wire drawing. For the remainder of this chapter we’ll discuss two methods in detail – magnetic annealing and roll anisotropy, and mention a few others.

11.3.1 Magnetic annealing

The term “magnetic annealing” refers to the heating and slow cooling of a sample in the presence of a magnetic field. In metal alloys this creates an easy axis of magnetization parallel to the applied field. The phenomenon was first observed in permalloy in the 1950s. Schematic hysteresis curves are shown in Fig. 11.7 for permalloy cooled in a field oriented parallel (Fig. 11.7(a)) and perpendicular (Fig. 11.7(b)) to the subsequently applied measurement field. It is clear that the...
observed hysteresis behavior can be attributed to uniaxial anisotropy induced with the easy axis parallel to the annealing field.

Magnetic annealing induces anisotropy because it causes *directional order*. The details of the physics are not understood, but we’ll look at a schematic after we’ve discussed roll anisotropy in the next section.

### 11.3.2 Roll anisotropy

A large magnetic anisotropy can also be created by *cold-rolling* of Fe–Ni alloys. For example, isoperm™, which is a 50:50 Fe–Ni alloy, can be cold-rolled with the (001) plane in the sheet and [100] as the rolling direction; this is conventionally written as (001)[100]. After recrystallization, then subsequent rolling to 50% thickness reduction, a large uniaxial anisotropy is created, with the easy axis in the plane of the sheet and perpendicular to the rolling direction. As a result, subsequent magnetization *parallel* to the rolling direction takes place entirely by domain rotation, giving a linear $B$–$H$ curve, and a roughly constant permeability over a wide range of applied fields. The geometry and magnetization curve are shown in Fig. 11.8.

### 11.3.3 Explanation for induced magnetic anisotropy

Both magnetic annealing and cold-rolling induce magnetic anisotropy because they cause *directional order*. The iron and nickel atoms in permalloy are able to migrate (particularly along defects such as slip planes) so that, instead of forming a random solid solution, there is an increased number of Fe–Fe or Ni–Ni neighbors along the direction of the applied field (in magnetic annealing) or perpendicular to the roll direction (in cold-rolling), as shown in Fig. 11.9. The details of why this ordering

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژی
11.3 Induced magnetic anisotropy

Figure 11.8 Cold-rolling of isoperm\textsuperscript{TM} and resulting magnetization curve.

Figure 11.9 Directional order caused by magnetic annealing or cold-rolling.

occurs, and why it results in a magnetic easy axis, are not understood, but it is believed to derive from the spin–orbit interaction.

11.3.4 Other ways of inducing magnetic anisotropy

If a Ni–Fe alloy is bombarded with neutrons in the presence of a magnetic field along the [100] direction, anisotropy is induced with the easy axis parallel to [100] and the hard axis parallel to [110]. Such magnetic irradiation creates defects which allow directional ordering to occur. Similarly, photo-induced magnetic anisotropy can be caused by annealing in the presence of electromagnetic radiation, and stress annealing also causes anisotropy. As a result of the large variety of extrinsic phenomena that can cause anisotropy in thin films, many thin-film magnetic alloys show substantial magnetic anisotropy.
Anisotropy

Homework

Exercises

11.1 Sketch the domain structure you would expect in spherical samples of ferromagnetic materials with the following properties:
- zero magnetocrystalline anisotropy
- large uniaxial anisotropy
- large magnetostriction
- a very small sample

11.2 What characteristics would you expect in the hysteresis loop of a ferromagnetic particle with average magnetocrystalline anisotropy which is so small that it consists of a single domain? Suggest an application. More about this in the next chapter.
“It is hard to be brave,” said Piglet, sniffing slightly, “when you’re only a Very Small Animal.”

A.A. Milne, Winnie the Pooh

12
Nanoparticles and thin films

12.1 Magnetic properties of small particles

The magnetic properties of small particles are dominated by the fact that below a certain critical size a particle contains only one domain. Remember from Chapter 7 that the width of a domain wall depends on the balance between the exchange energy (which prefers a wide wall) and the magnetocrystalline anisotropy energy (which prefers a narrow wall). The balance results in typical domain-wall widths of around 1000 Å. So, qualitatively, we might guess that if a particle is smaller than around 1000 Å a domain wall won’t be able to fit inside it, and a single-domain particle will result!

We can make a better estimate of the size of single-domain particles by looking at the balance between the magnetostatic energy and the domain-wall energy (Fig. 12.1). A single-domain particle (Fig. 12.1(a)) has high magnetostatic energy but no domain-wall energy, whereas a multi-domain particle (Fig. 12.1(b)) has lower magnetostatic energy but higher domain-wall energy. It turns out that the reduction in magnetostatic energy is proportional to the volume of the particle (i.e. $r^3$, where $r$ is the particle radius), and the increase in the domain-wall energy is proportional to the area of the wall, $r^2$. The magnetostatic and exchange energies depend on particle radius as shown in Fig. 12.2. Below some critical radius, $r_c$, it is energetically unfavorable to form domain walls, and a single-domain particle is formed.

Large single-domain particles can form if either the domain-wall energy is large (because of, for example, large magnetocrystalline anisotropy), so that wall
Figure 12.1 Balance between magnetostatic and domain-wall energies in single- and multi-domain particles. (a) Single-domain particle with high magnetostatic energy. (b) Introduction of a domain wall reduces the magnetization energy but increases the exchange energy.

Figure 12.2 Relative stability of single- and multi-domain particles.
formation is unfavorable, or if the saturation magnetization is small, so that the magnetostatic energy is small.

### 12.1.1 Experimental evidence for single-domain particles

Small particles were known to have a large coercivity long before it was proved that they contain only one domain. The fact that the large coercivity of small particles is the result of single domains, rather than, for example, strain preventing easy domain-wall motion, was demonstrated in a seminal paper by Kittel and co-workers [46] in the 1950s. The authors made dilute suspensions of spherical Ni particles in paraffin wax, and measured the field required to saturate the magnetization of the samples for two particle diameters – 200 Å (below $r_c$) and 80,000 Å (above $r_c$). They found that the field required to saturate the small samples was 550 Oe, only slightly larger than that required to overcome the magnetocrystalline anisotropy. As a result they concluded that the particles consisted of single domains. By contrast, the field required to saturate the large particles was 2100 Oe, which is slightly higher than the demagnetizing field for Ni. The different saturation fields clearly indicated that magnetization in large particles takes place via a different mechanism (in fact through domain-wall motion and rotation) than that in small particles. Large multi-domain particles can be kept in a saturated state only by a field larger than the demagnetizing field, whereas small single-domain particles are always saturated, with the spontaneous magnetization in the same direction throughout their volume. The applied magnetic field required to magnetize a single-domain particle must overcome the anisotropy, but not a demagnetizing field.

### 12.1.2 Magnetization mechanism

Before application of an external field, the magnetization of a single-domain particle lies along an easy direction (as shown in Fig. 12.3(a)) which is determined by the shape and magnetocrystalline anisotropies. When an external field is applied in the opposite direction, the particle is unable to respond by domain-wall motion, and instead the magnetization must rotate through the hard direction (Fig. 12.3(b)) to the new easy direction (Fig. 12.3(c)). The anisotropy forces which hold the magnetization in an easy direction are strong, and so the coercivity is large. We’ll discuss in Chapter 15 how this large coercivity has led to the use of small particles in magnetic media applications.

Another notable feature of small particles which is desirable for magnetic media applications is the square hysteresis loop which results when the magnetic field is applied along an easy direction. Two stable states of opposite magnetization exist,
and the field required to switch between them is well defined. A typical hysteresis loop for fields applied parallel to the easy direction is shown in Fig. 12.4(a). If the field is applied along a hard direction, there is initially no component of magnetization along the field direction. The field rotates the magnetization into the field direction, but as soon as the field is removed it rotates back into the easy direction. As a result there is no hysteresis and the $M-H$ curve is approximately linear, as shown in Fig. 12.4(b). Therefore, for storage media, the particles must all be aligned with their easy axes parallel to the direction in which the write field will be applied. Any deviation from perfect alignment results in a loss of squareness of the overall $M-H$ curve for the sample.

### 12.1.3 Superparamagnetism

Figure 12.5 shows a schematic of the variation in coercivity of small particles with particle diameter. As the size of the sample is reduced from the bulk, the coercivity initially increases as single-domain particles are formed, as discussed above. Below some critical radius, however, the coercivity decreases and eventually drops to zero.
The drop in coercivity at very small particle size is the result of a corresponding reduction in anisotropy energy with size. The anisotropy energy, which holds the magnetization along an easy direction, is given by the product of the anisotropy constant, $K$, and the volume, $V$, of the particle. As the volume is reduced, $KV$ becomes comparable to the thermal energy, $k_B T$. As a result, thermal energy can overcome the anisotropy “force” and spontaneously reverse the magnetization of a particle from one easy direction to the other, even in the absence of an applied field.

This phenomenon is called “superparamagnetism” because, as a result of this competition between anisotropy and thermal energies, assemblies of small particles show magnetization behavior that is qualitatively similar to that of local moment paramagnetic materials, but with a much larger magnetic moment. The behavior is quantitatively quite different, however, because the magnetic moment of a 50 Å particle is typically around $1000\mu_B$, whereas that of a magnetic atom is of the order of the Bohr magneton. In both cases an applied field tends to align the magnetic moments, and thermal energy tends to disalign them. However, because the magnetic moment in superparamagnetic particles is so much larger than that in atoms, the particles become aligned at correspondingly smaller values of the magnetic field.

If the anisotropy is zero, then the magnetic moment of each particle can point in any direction, and the classical theory of paramagnetism reproduces the behavior of the particles well. The magnetization is described by the Langevin function, as we saw in Section 5.1:

$$M = Nm \left[ \coth \left( \frac{mH}{k_B T} \right) - \frac{k_B T}{mH} \right]$$  \hspace{1cm} (12.1)

$$= NmL(\alpha),$$  \hspace{1cm} (12.2)
where $\alpha = mH/k_B T$, and $L(\alpha) = \coth(\alpha) - 1/\alpha$ is the Langevin function. In the superparamagnetic case, however, because the magnetic moment per particle, $m$, is large, $\alpha$ is correspondingly large, and so the full magnetization curve, up to saturation, can be observed easily even at moderate fields. (Remember that, for ordinary paramagnetic materials, very high fields and low temperatures were required to study the whole magnetization curve.)

If the anisotropy of each particle is finite, and the particles are aligned with their easy axes parallel to each other and the field, then the moment directions are quantized, with two allowed orientations. In this case the magnetization is described by the special case of the Brillouin function with $J = \frac{1}{2}$, i.e.

$$M = Nm \tanh(\alpha).$$

Again, the entire magnetization curve can be obtained even at moderate fields.

In the general case, the particles are not perfectly aligned, and neither of these ideal equations exactly describes the observed magnetization curve. Also, in most samples the particles are not all the same size and the moment per particle is not constant, giving further deviation from ideality. In all cases, however, there is no hysteresis (that is, the coercivity and the remanent magnetization are both zero), and so superparamagnetic materials are not suitable for recording media. Superparamagnetism can be destroyed by reducing the temperature, increasing the particle size, or increasing the anisotropy, such that $KV > k_B T$.

Figure 12.6 shows the magnetization curves of 44 Å diameter iron particles from one of the earliest studies of superparamagnetism [47]. At 200 K and 77 K the particles show typical superparamagnetic behavior, with no hysteresis. Note also that the induced magnetization is higher at 77 K than at 200 K for the same applied field, as we would expect from the Langevin theory. At 4.2 K, however, the particles do not have enough thermal energy to overcome their energy gain from orienting along the applied field direction, and so hysteresis is observed (only half of the hysteresis loop is shown in the figure). An operating temperature of 4.2 K is clearly undesirable in a practical device, and so these particles would not be suitable for magnetic media applications!

**Inter-particle interactions**

It has been observed experimentally that when the anisotropy of small particles is derived primarily from shape anisotropy, the coercive field drops as the packing density is increased. This is a result of inter-particle interactions. Qualitatively we can understand this effect by considering the field that a magnetized particle exerts on its neighbor, as shown in Fig. 12.7. All the particles are initially magnetized in the up direction. We see from the figure that the field which particle A exerts on particle C acts in the down direction. So when the external field is reversed and...
12.1 Magnetic properties of small particles

Figure 12.6 Magnetization curves of iron particles above and below the superparamagnetic transition temperature. From [47]. Copyright 1956 American Institute of Physics. Reproduced with permission.

Figure 12.7 Inter-particle interactions in media composed of small particles.

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسی مواد و مالورژی
applied in the down direction, the field from particle A acting on particle C assists the applied external field, and so C reverses its magnetization at a lower applied field than it would in isolation. Overall the sample has a lower coercivity than a collection of isolated particles. (Of course we can see from the picture that the opposite effect occurs at B – that is, the field from A works against the external reversed field. In reality the situation is more complicated than our simple picture!) As the packing density increases the interactions increase and the coercivity is further suppressed.

12.2 Thin-film magnetism

Magnetic thin films are tremendously important technologically, since most electronic devices that exploit magnetic behaviors use thin-film architectures. In addition to their technological importance they are of interest because they show novel physics as a result of their reduced size and dimensionality. Here we summarize the ways in which the magnetism of thin films differs from that of the corresponding bulk materials. There have been a number of recent reviews written on the subject; two that provide particularly good overviews are [48] and [49].

12.2.1 Structure

Thin magnetic films are usually grown using layer-by-layer techniques such as molecular beam epitaxy or pulsed laser deposition, which ideally place atoms on a substrate one layer at a time. As a result, new or modified phases, which do not occur in bulk materials, can be accessed.

First, if the material and the substrate have similar lattice constants (within a few percent), the material will often match its in-plane lattice constant to that of the substrate. Such coherent growth results in a strained state, which can modify the magnetic behavior in a number of ways. The most striking change obviously occurs if new structural phases which are unstable or metastable in the bulk are stabilized by the strain; these will likely have different magnetic properties from the bulk stable phase. Changes in local bond lengths and coordination environments can also lead to transitions between spin states, with, for example, small coordination cages favoring high-spin states, and larger cages favoring low-spin arrangements with their larger Coulomb repulsion between the electrons and consequently larger volume. Since low- and high-spin configurations usually have different local magnetic moments, profound changes in magnetic properties can result. Changes in bond angles in transition-metal oxides can modify magnetic ordering temperatures and even switch between ferro- and antiferromagnetically ordered states.
which are favored by different interaction orientations. Finally, strain can couple to magnetism through the magnetostrictive/magnetoelastic coupling discussed in Chapter 7.

Second, alloys with artificial arrangements of the atoms can be engineered using layer-by-layer growth. For example, alternating layers of Fe and Ni could be achieved rather than the random arrangement found in conventional Fe/Ni alloys. Such layered arrangements obviously have vastly different anisotropies from random alloys. Heterostructuring with non-magnetic materials can also cause entirely new physics, such as the giant magnetoresistance (GMR) effect that we will discuss in the next chapter.

### 12.2.2 Interfaces

The presence of interfaces, both with air or vacuum at the surface and with the substrate at the base of the film, can cause drastic changes in behavior. Perhaps the most important interfacial proximity effect is the exchange-bias coupling which we already mentioned in Chapter 8; we will devote Chapter 14 to a detailed discussion of exchange bias. Chemical bonding across the interface, and the absence of atoms to bond to at the surface, can strongly modify magnetic properties. In particular, the magnitude of the magnetization is often modified from its bulk value at surfaces and interfaces in thin films. There is a straightforward hand-waving explanation for this: Bulk Fe, for example, has a magnetization corresponding to \(2.2 \mu_B\) per Fe atom, whereas an isolated Fe atom has four unpaired d electrons and so has a spin-only moment of \(4 \mu_B\). When the coordination is between those of the bulk solid and the isolated atom, an intermediate value is found. Finally, the change in symmetry that occurs at an interface can cause entirely new physics to emerge. For example an otherwise centrosymmetric material loses its inversion center at an interface, and this can cause phenomena such as the magnetoelectric effect (Chapter 18) to become symmetry-allowed [50].

### 12.2.3 Anisotropy

From our discussion of shape anisotropy in Chapter 11 we might expect that the magnetization orientation in thin films should always be in-plane in order to minimize the demagnetizing field. At the surface of a magnetic film, however, the absence of neighboring atoms severely modifies the magnetocrystalline anisotropy, as mentioned above. This tends to cause the moments to align perpendicular to the surface, a phenomenon known as surface anisotropy. We will see in Chapter 15 that this perpendicular alignment is crucial in the modern magnetic-recording industry!
The resulting competition between shape and surface anisotropies can lead to reorientation transitions as a function of thickness, with perpendicular orientations preferred for very thin films, where the fraction of surface atoms is larger. In fact the surface anisotropy is often used to define the critical length scale for considering magnetic films to be thin.

### 12.2.4 How thin is thin?

The conventional definition of a thin (sometimes referred to as ultrathin) magnetic film is the limit at which the surface anisotropy, which tends to align the surface spins perpendicular to the plane, combined with the exchange, which tends to align all spins parallel, achieve an overall perpendicular alignment of all magnetic moments in the sample.

For thicker samples the magnetostatic energy dominates over the surface anisotropy and the spins align in-plane to reduce the demagnetizing field. While the transition thickness is sensitive to the magnitudes of the exchange, surface anisotropy, and magnetostatic energies, as well as extrinsic factors such as surface or interfacial roughness, the transition to thin-film behavior usually occurs at around 20–30 atomic layers.

### 12.2.5 The limit of two-dimensionality

Note that although thin films are often referred to colloquially as two-dimensional, this is not really a formally correct designation. True two-dimensional behavior in fact requires a vanishingly thin film; if it could be achieved it would show severely modified magnetic behavior. In particular, it was shown theoretically in the 1960s that an isotropic two-dimensional system with finite-ranged interactions should not have long-range magnetic order at finite temperature [51]. Experimentally, however, long-range order is observed even in magnetic monolayers, although the Curie temperatures do tend to be lower than those of the corresponding bulk materials. Possible sources of the persistent magnetic ordering are anisotropy and/or long-range dipole–dipole interactions which were not included in the original derivation. Both of these factors suppress finite temperature fluctuations and enhance the tendency to ordering. And of course even a monolayer of atoms has some finite extent perpendicular to the layer and is not purely two-dimensional!

**Further reading**


[www.iran-mavad.com](http://www.iran-mavad.com)
J.A.C. Bland and B. Heinrich, eds. *Ultrathin Magnetic Structures*. Springer, 2005. This four-part series is very comprehensive:

*I: An Introduction to the Electronic, Magnetic and Structural Properties*

*II: Measurement Techniques and Novel Magnetic Properties*

*III: Fundamentals of Nanomagnetism*

*IV: Applications of Nanomagnetism*


Magnetoresistance in metals is hardly likely to attract attention except in rather pure materials at low temperatures.

Sir A.B. Pippard, F.R.S. *Magnetoresistance in Metals*, 1989

The term “magnetoresistance” refers to the change in resistance of a material when a magnetic field is applied. The magnetoresistive (MR) ratio is defined as the ratio of the change in resistance when the field is applied to the resistance at zero field, that is,

\[
\text{MR ratio} = \frac{R_H - R_0}{R_0} = \frac{\Delta R}{R}.
\]

So a material which has a larger resistance in the presence of a field than in the absence of a field is defined to have a positive magnetoresistance, whereas if the field reduces the resistivity, the magnetoresistance is negative.

The phenomenon of magnetoresistance has been the subject of a great deal of recent research interest, and magnetoresistive materials are used today in a number of commercially available technologies, such as magnetic sensors, the read component in magnetic recording heads, and magnetic memories. In this section we will describe the nature and origin of magnetoresistance in normal metals, then discuss anisotropic magnetoresistance in ferromagnetic metals, so-called *giant magnetoresistance* in metallic multilayers, and *colossal magnetoresistance* in perovskite-structure manganites.
13.1 Magnetoresistance in normal metals

In the absence of an external field, electrons travel through a solid in straight lines in between scattering events, as shown below:

For a free-electron gas, the same is true even in the presence of an applied field. Although the applied field exerts a force (the Lorentz force) on the electrons, which deflects them from their path, the electric field created by the displaced electrons exactly balances the Lorentz force, and at equilibrium the electrons follow the same straight-line path as in the absence of the field. This is the physics of the Hall effect, which is illustrated in Fig. 13.1. In the figure the electrons moving with velocity \( v \) in the \( x \) direction are initially deflected towards the \( y \) direction by a field \( H \) applied in the \( z \) direction. As a result of the exact balance between this Lorentz force and the induced electric field, \( E_y \), the electrons regain their straight-line trajectories, and an ideal free-electron gas has zero magnetoresistance.

However, in a “real” metal, the conduction electrons have different mean velocities, and although on average the transverse Hall electric field exactly balances the magnetic field, individual electrons travel in a curved path as shown below:

Since the Lorentz force, \( e v \times B \), curls the electrons into orbits, they travel further and scatter more, and so the resistance in the presence of the field is larger than the resistance in the absence of the field. Therefore the magnetoresistance in normal metals is positive. The effect is, however, very small, and does not have a technological application.

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسی مواد و ماتالورژی
Figure 13.2 Anisotropic magnetoresistance in a ferromagnetic metal such as permalloy. The resistivity, $\rho$, is shown for fields applied parallel and transverse to the current direction.

13.2 Magnetoresistance in ferromagnetic metals

13.2.1 Anisotropic magnetoresistance

Larger magnetoresistive effects, of around 2%, are observed in ferromagnetic metals and their alloys. The phenomenon is called anisotropic magnetoresistance (AMR) because the change in resistance when a field is applied parallel to the current direction is different from that when the field is perpendicular to the current direction. This dependence of the resistance on the field orientation was first reported in the 1850s by W. Thomson (also known as Lord Kelvin), who also coined the term “magnetoresistance” [52].

As shown in Fig. 13.2, the resistance for current flowing parallel to the field direction, $\rho_{\text{parallel}}$, increases when a field is applied, whereas the resistance for current flowing perpendicular to the field direction, $\rho_{\text{perpendicular}}$, decreases by approximately the same amount. The effect is significant even in small fields. In fact, for much of the 1990s, anisotropic magnetoresistive materials were widely used as the read elements in recording heads. Note that the magnetoresistance saturates at applied fields of around 5–10 Oe.

The origin of AMR lies in the spin–orbit coupling, and was first explained by Kondo [53] in the early 1960s. The $s$ electrons which are responsible for the conduction are scattered by the unquenched part of the orbital angular momentum of the 3d electrons. There is experimental evidence supporting this assumption, in the fact that the observed magnetoresistance correlates with the deviation of the gyromagnetic ratio from its spin-only value of 2. As the magnetization direction rotates in response to the applied magnetic field, the 3d electron cloud deforms, and
13.2 Magnetoresistance in ferromagnetic metals

changes the amount of scattering of the conduction electrons. The process is shown schematically in Fig. 13.3; when the magnetization direction is perpendicular to the current direction, the scattering cross-section is reduced compared with the zero-field case, whereas when the magnetization direction is parallel to the current direction, the scattering cross-section is increased.

13.2.2 Magnetoresistance from spontaneous magnetization

In normal non-magnetic metals, the resistivity decreases smoothly with decreasing temperature. This is the result of decreased thermal vibrations of the atoms causing a more ordered lattice, in turn causing less scattering of the conduction electrons. Below the ferromagnetic ordering temperature in ferromagnetic metals there is an additional reduction in the resistivity, beyond that which is observed in normal metals. This additional reduction in resistivity is due to the increased directional ordering of the magnetic moments, which also results in less scattering of the conduction electrons [54]. A schematic plot of the resistance as a function of temperature in non-magnetic Pd and magnetic Ni is shown in Fig. 13.4 (the curves are normalized so that the resistances at the Curie temperature of Ni are set equal).
13.2.3 Giant magnetoresistance

Magnetic fields can induce substantial changes in resistance in carefully engineered multilayers of thin ferromagnetic metals separated by non-magnetic or antiferromagnetic metals. This phenomenon – known as giant magnetoresistance (GMR) – is of tremendous importance, both technologically (for example, sensors in the read heads of computer hard drives use the GMR effect) and in terms of the fundamental physics it reveals. The 2007 Nobel Prize in Physics was awarded to Albert Fert and Peter Grünberg for their discovery of GMR. The effect was first observed in the late 1980s [55, 56] in metallic multilayers of Fe/Cr. Data from the original papers from the Grünberg and Fert groups are shown in Fig. 13.5. Note that typical giant magnetoresistance values are an order of magnitude larger than those in AMR materials.

Two basic physical concepts are important in understanding giant magnetoresistance: interlayer exchange coupling, which determines the relative orientations of the magnetizations in the ferromagnetic layers, and spin-dependent transport.

Interlayer exchange coupling. The GMR effect occurs in multilayers in which thin layers of magnetic material are separated by thin layers of non-magnetic metals. Depending on the thickness of the non-magnetic layers, the magnetic layers couple either ferromagnetically or antiferromagnetically. Early data from Grünberg’s laboratory notebook, showing the oscillatory variation in the exchange constant as a function of interlayer spacing, are shown in Fig. 13.6. Although understanding the detailed nature of the coupling mechanism is still an active research area, the oscillatory behavior clearly resembles that of the RKKY mechanism that we discussed in Chapter 8. For small interlayer spacings the magnetic layers couple ferromagnetically, at larger spacings the antiferromagnetic arrangement is preferred, then the ferromagnetic again and so on. As the spacing increases the strength of the coupling is reduced so that the energy difference between ferro- and antiferromagnetic arrangements of the layers is smaller.

Giant magnetoresistance occurs when the thicknesses are chosen such that the adjacent magnetic layers are antiferromagnetic in zero applied field, as shown in Fig. 13.7(a), i.e. when the effective interlayer exchange coupling is negative. The effect of the applied magnetic field is to change the relative orientation of the magnetic layers to a parallel alignment (Fig. 13.7(b)).

Spin-dependent transport. The change in resistance with applied field results from the difference in resistivity between the antiparallel and parallel orientations of the magnetic layers. The antiparallel arrangement has high resistance because up-spin electrons are strongly scattered by regions of down-spin magnetization and vice versa. In contrast, when the magnetic layers are ferromagnetically aligned, conduction electrons of compatible spin-type are able to move through the
13.2 Magnetoresistance in ferromagnetic metals

Figure 13.5  The first demonstrations of giant magnetoresistance in Fe/Cr superlattices. (a) Room-temperature magnetoresistance in a five layer structure containing 3 layers of Fe separated by Cr. (b) Data at 4.2 K for three different superlattices. In both cases the current and the applied field are in the plane of the layers. From [56] (a) and [55] (b). Copyright 1988, 1989 the American Physical Society. Reproduced with permission.

heterostructure with minimal scattering, and the overall resistance of the material is lowered.

The difference in scattering between antiferromagnetically and ferromagnetically aligned multilayers can be understood within a band structure picture [57]. As shown schematically in Fig. 13.8, in a normal metal there are equal numbers of up- and down-spin states at the Fermi level; therefore up- and down-spin
Magnetoresistance

Figure 13.6 Original data showing exchange coupling as a function of interlayer spacing from Peter Grünberg’s 2007 Nobel Prize lecture. Copyright the Nobel Foundation. Reproduced with permission.

![Graph showing exchange coupling](image)

Figure 13.7 Schematic of the high- and low-resistance states of GMR multilayer systems.

![Schematic](image)

Electrons travel through a normal metal with equal probability. In a spin-polarized metal, however, there are more states of one spin direction than the other at the Fermi level. In the particular example shown in Fig. 13.8, only down-spin states are available at the Fermi level, and hence only down-spin electrons can travel through the system. As we discussed in Chapter 9, such a material is said to be half-metallic, since it is metallic for one spin polarization and insulating for the other. Provided that adjacent magnetic layers are magnetized in the same direction, the down-spin electrons are able to conduct through the system, since down-spin...
states continue to exist at the Fermi level. Therefore the ferromagnetic arrangement has a low resistance. If an adjacent layer is aligned \textit{antiferromagnetically}, however, the up- and down-spin densities of states are reversed, giving only up-spin states at the Fermi level. The down-spin electrons entering the second layer find no down-spin states available at the Fermi level, and hence are scattered. As a result the antiferromagnetic arrangement has a high resistance.

This change in resistance with applied magnetic field has obvious applications for the sensing of magnetic fields. In Chapter 15 we will discuss in detail the use of the GMR effect in the read element of the recording head in hard-disk drives, where it is used to detect the orientation of stored magnetic data bits.

It can also be used in storage, with the low- and high-resistance state representing “1” and “0” binary data bits. Here, a particularly promising direction is that of magnetoresistive random-access memory (MRAM) which uses the “cross-point” architecture that we described in the context of the historical ferrite-core memories in Chapter 9: Memory cells are arranged in a square matrix, joined by two perpendicular arrays of wires, and to switch a particular magnetic cell, currents are passed down the horizontal and vertical wires (called “bit lines” and “word lines”) that intersect at that cell. The combined action of the magnetic fields associated with the horizontal and vertical currents causes that cell to switch, ideally without affecting the other cells in the system.

The most promising memory cells for MRAM are so-called \textit{magnetic tunnel junctions} (MTJs), which are placed at the intersection of the bit and word lines. An MTJ consists of two ferromagnetic layers separated by an insulating tunneling barrier; one of the ferromagnetic layers is pinned through exchange bias to an adjacent antiferromagnet to align in a specific direction, while the other is able to reorient in response to an applied field. The relative orientations of the ferromagnetic layers determine the resistance of the structure (parallel alignment allows current flow,
whereas antiparallel has a high resistance), through the giant magnetoresistance effect described above. Therefore the parallel and antiparallel arrangements can be used as “1” and “0” data bits, which are easily detectable because of their different conductivities. While magnetic tunnel junctions were first reported more than 30 years ago [58], they only operated at low temperature and at very low bias. The substantial changes in resistance with orientation necessary for a workable device were achieved only recently [59].

MRAM is distinct from traditional semiconductor random-access memory (RAM) because it is non-volatile, that is, it retains data when the power is switched off. In addition to the obvious advantage of not losing the unsaved portion of one’s carefully written book chapter during a power outage, this also means lower power consumption (very important for portable technologies) and faster boot-up times for computer applications. Also the read, write, and access times are fast, unlike with existing non-volatile technologies such as flash and read-only memories (ROMs). Its current limitations are low density and high cost, although ongoing research efforts might well overcome both. For a complete review, see [60].

### 13.3 Colossal magnetoresistance

Colossal magnetoresistance (CMR) was first observed in 1994 by Jin et al. [61] in the perovskite-structure manganite, La$_{0.67}$Ca$_{0.33}$MnO$_3$. The term “colossal” was chosen because of the very large change in resistance, essentially from an insulating to a conducting state, on application of a magnetic field. A typical response in resistivity as a function of applied field is shown in Fig. 13.9. Although the original experiments were at low temperature, similar effects have since been observed at or near room temperature. However, large fields, of the order of a few teslas, are still required to cause the change in resistance. Therefore CMR materials are not currently considered likely to find direct practical application as magnetic sensors, or in particular as the read element in recording heads. A number of other applications are being explored, however, including their use in bolometers, where a change in temperature causes a change in conductivity driven by a metal–insulator transition, and in spin-tunneling devices that exploit their half-metallicity. Finally, it is possible that switching might be achieved at practical field strengths by using clever device architectures such as magnetic tunnel junctions [62].

#### 13.3.1 Superexchange and double exchange

In order to interpret the properties of CMR materials, we first need to understand their structure in some detail. The perovskite structure (Fig. 13.10) consists
13.3 Colossal magnetoresistance

Figure 13.9 Typical change in resistance with applied field in a LaCaMnO film at 77 K.

Figure 13.10 The perovskite structure. The small cation (in black) is surrounded by an octahedron of oxygen anions (in gray). The large cations (white) occupy the unit cell corners. Three cubic primitive unit cells are shown to illustrate the linear O–Mn–O–Mn chains (seen running horizontally in the figure) which propagate in the three Cartesian directions.
of a small cation, manganese in this case, surrounded by an octahedron of oxygen anions, with a large cation, La or Ca here, filling the space at the corners of the unit cell. Note the O–Mn–O–Mn chains running along all three Cartesian directions. Perovskite structure manganites were studied extensively in the 1950s, in part because they have a very rich phase diagram, with both the magnetic and structural ordering depending on the amount of doping and the temperature [63, 64]. A modern phase diagram of the (La,Ca)MnO₃ system is shown in Fig. 13.11 [65].

Before we can explain the colossal magnetoresistance effect we first need to understand the phase diagram of (La,Ca)MnO₃. Let’s begin with the pure end-member compounds, LaMnO₃ and CaMnO₃, both of which are antiferromagnetic insulators. We saw in Chapter 8 how the superexchange mechanism leads to antiferromagnetic coupling between pairs of filled or empty transition-metal d orbitals, coupled by oxygen anions. In the CaMnO₃ end-point compound the Mn⁴⁺ ions have only three d electrons each. In this case the d orbitals oriented towards the oxygen anions are always empty, leading to antiferromagnetic interactions in all directions. The resulting structure is called G-type antiferromagnetic.

Interestingly, when an oxygen anion mediates 180° superexchange between one empty and one filled transition-metal d orbital, the resulting interaction is ferromagnetic. This is illustrated in Fig. 13.12: the empty transition-metal d orbital accepts an electron from the oxygen of the same spin type as the electrons forming its magnetic moment, and the filled orbital accepts one of opposite spin.

In the other end-point CMR compound, LaMnO₃, the Mn³⁺ ions each have four d electrons. As a result, some oxygen anions join pairs of filled orbitals, and some join

---

**Figure 13.11** Simplified phase diagram of La₁₋ₓCaₓMnO₃. From [65]. Copyright 1995 the American Physical Society. Reproduced with permission.
filled Mn d orbitals with empty Mn d orbitals. Geometric arguments [63] account for the experimentally observed A-type antiferromagnetism, in which (100) planes of ferromagnetically aligned Mn ions are coupled antiferromagnetically to each other. Note that the terms “A-type” and “G-type” arise from an early characterization of different types of antiferromagnetic ordering observed using neutron scattering [64] in which the orderings were labeled A, B, C, etc.

In mixed-valence compounds such as $\text{La}_{x}\text{Ca}_{1-x}\text{MnO}_3$, an additional mechanism, proposed by Zener [66] and known as double exchange, influences the magnetic ordering. If an oxygen anion couples two Mn ions of different valence, such as a $\text{Mn}^{3+}$ and a $\text{Mn}^{4+}$ ion, then there are two possible configurations:

$$\psi_1: \text{Mn}^{3+} \text{O}^{2-} \text{Mn}^{4+}$$
$$\psi_2: \text{Mn}^{4+} \text{O}^{2-} \text{Mn}^{3+}$$

which have the same energy. If there is a finite probability that an electron initially on the $\text{Mn}^{3+}$ ion is able to transfer to the $\text{Mn}^{4+}$ ion (converting $\psi_1$ into $\psi_2$) then the degeneracy will be lifted, lowering the energy of one of the new states, and hence the overall energy, by the magnitude of the transfer matrix element. Such an electron transfer can only occur if the magnetic moments on the two Mn ions are parallel; otherwise Hund’s rule would be violated when an electron of the wrong spin type arrived at the new atom. Therefore the lower-energy state can only be obtained for ferromagnetic ordering. Note that the double-exchange mechanism accounts for both ferromagnetism and metallicity.

The CMR effect is strongest in the region of Ca doping of around $\frac{1}{3}$. We see that in this region the material undergoes a phase transition from a paramagnetic insulating phase at high temperature to a ferromagnetic metal at low temperature. The magnetic and conduction behaviors are intimately coupled because, when the magnetic moments are not aligned (in the paramagnetic state), electrons cannot transfer between them without violating Hund’s rule, and double exchange does not occur. Although the details of the CMR mechanism are still not well understood, it is believed that an applied field causes a similar phase transition, with a corresponding increase in conductivity associated with the alignment of the spins.
13.1 Review question

(a) Calculate the magnetic field generated by an electron moving in a circular orbit of radius 1 Å with angular momentum $\hbar$ J s, at a distance of 3 Å from the center of the orbit, and along its axis.

(b) Calculate the magnetic dipole moment of the electron in (a). Give your answer in (i) SI and (ii) cgs units.

(c) Sketch the field lines around the magnetic dipole when it is oriented such that its north pole is pointing upward. What would be the preferred orientation of a second dipole if it were (i) vertically above the original dipole (i.e. along its axis) or (ii) horizontal from the original dipole?

(d) Based on your answer to (c), sketch the magnetic ordering in a 3D lattice of magnetic moments, assuming that the classical dipole–dipole interaction is the principal driving force between the moments.

(e) Calculate the magnetic dipolar energy of an electron in the field generated by a second electron at a distance of 3 Å away along its axis, assuming that the magnetic moment of the second electron is aligned (i) parallel or (ii) antiparallel to the field from the first electron. Based on your answer, estimate the ordering temperature of your 3D lattice of classical magnetic moments.

(f) What are the electronic structures of Mn$^{3+}$ and Mn$^{4+}$ ions? What are the magnetic moments of these ions (assuming that only the spin and not the orbital angular momentum contributes to the magnetic moment)?

(g) Use chemical bonding arguments to predict the magnetic structure of a cubic 3D lattice of (i) Mn$^{3+}$ ions linked by oxygen anions (such as is found in LaMnO$_3$) and (ii) Mn$^{4+}$ ions linked by oxygen anions (such as is found in CaMnO$_3$). Given that the Néel temperature of CaMnO$_3$ is around 120 K, compare the strength of the Mn–Mn interactions in CaMnO$_3$ with those between the classical magnetic moments described above.

(h) What kind of magnetic interaction would you expect between two adjacent manganese ions, one of which is Mn$^{3+}$ and one of which is Mn$^{4+}$, which are bonded by an O$^{2-}$ ion? (Such an arrangement occurs in the colossal magnetoresistive material La$_{1-x}$Ca$_x$MnO$_3$.)

Further reading


In Chapter 8 we described the original 1956 experiment on Co/CoO nanoparticles [40] in which the shift in hysteresis loop known as exchange bias or exchange anisotropy was first observed. The goal of this chapter is to describe the exchange-bias phenomenon in more detail and to point out open questions in the field, which remains an active area of research. Significantly, a simple theoretical model that accounts for all experimental observations is still lacking.

Remember that exchange bias appears when a ferromagnetic/antiferromagnetic interface is cooled in the presence of a magnetic field through the Néel temperature of the antiferromagnet (Fig. 14.1). The Curie temperature of the ferromagnet should be above the Néel temperature of the antiferromagnet so that its moments are already aligned in the field direction; this is usually the case for typical FM/AFM combinations. In a simple model, the neighboring moments of the antiferromagnet then align parallel to their ferromagnetic neighbors when their Néel temperature is reached during the field cooling process. An exchange-biased system shows two characteristic features: first, a shift in the magnetic hysteresis loop of the ferromagnet below the $T_N$ of the AFM, as though an additional biasing magnetic field were present, resulting in a unidirectional magnetic anisotropy; and second, an increase in coercivity and a wider hysteresis loop, which can even occur independently of the field cooling process.

Within this simple cartoon model, the exchange bias can be understood as follows (Fig. 14.2): In zero field, the moments in the ferromagnet tend to align along the direction set by the field applied during the field cooling process. When the
Exchange bias

Figure 14.1 Exchange bias appears when a FM/AFM system is cooled in a magnetic field through the Néel temperature of the antiferromagnet. The top layer is a ferromagnetic metal such as Co and the lower layer an antiferromagnet such as CoO. The black arrows represent magnetic moments on the transition-metal ions in both the ferro- and the antiferromagnet; the circles are anions such as oxygen.

Figure 14.2 Cartoon explanation of the origin of exchange bias. As in Fig. 14.1, the black arrows represent the magnetic moments on transition-metal ions and the circles represent oxygen anions in the antiferromagnet.
14.1 Problems with the simple cartoon mechanism

Figure 14.3 Uncompensated (left) and compensated (right) antiferromagnetic interfaces. While the simplest model of exchange bias would predict no anisotropy at a fully compensated interface, it is actually observed at both interface types.

In practice, of course, the mechanism is much more complicated than this intuitively appealing model, and sorting out the details remains an active research area. Perhaps the most glaring problem with the simple cartoon is that it predicts zero exchange bias for so-called compensated antiferromagnetic surfaces, which contain equal numbers of oppositely oriented spins (Fig. 14.3). In reality, however, exchange bias is reported at both compensated and uncompensated interfaces.

Another difficulty with the model is that it strongly disagrees quantitatively with experimental observations, predicting an amount of exchange bias which is many orders of magnitude larger than those observed experimentally. In the model, the dominant contributions to the magnetic energy are the interaction of the ferromagnet with the applied field, $H$, the anisotropy energy in the antiferromagnet, and the interaction, $J_{\text{int}}$, between the ferromagnet and the antiferromagnet at their interface.
So we can write the energy, $E$, as [67]

$$E = -HM_{\text{FM}} \cos(\theta - \beta) + Kt_{\text{AFM}} \sin^2(\alpha) - J_{\text{int}} \cos(\beta - \alpha).$$

Here $M$ is the magnetization of the ferromagnet, $K$ is the anisotropy energy constant of the antiferromagnet, and $t_{\text{FM}}$ and $t_{\text{AFM}}$ are the thicknesses of the ferromagnet and antiferromagnet. The angles $\alpha$, $\beta$, and $\theta$ describe the angles between the AFM sublattice magnetization and the AFM anisotropy axis, the magnetization and the FM anisotropy axis, and the applied field and the FM anisotropy axis, respectively. Taking experimental values for magnetization and anisotropy energy, and assuming that the interfacial exchange coupling is similar to the exchange in the ferromagnet, one obtains (by minimizing the energy with respect to $\alpha$ and $\beta$) a loop shift of the order of $10^6$ Oe, which is many orders of magnitude larger than that observed experimentally. Extensions to the basic picture, such as the introduction of domain walls in the antiferromagnet, either parallel or perpendicular to the interface, surface roughness, and an assumption that only a small fraction of the interfacial spins contribute to $J_{\text{int}}$, have met with success in some specific cases, but a general picture is still elusive.

### 14.1.1 Ongoing research on exchange bias

A number of important recent developments are enabling new systematic studies of the details of the exchange-bias mechanism. First, improvements in the precision with which atomically precise thin-film multilayers can be grown are allowing production of high-quality films in which properties can be systematically varied and studied. For example, controlled deposition of $^{57}\text{Fe}$ probe layers buried at well-defined depths in an Fe film has allowed direct measurement of the depth dependence of Fe spin rotation during magnetization reversal in Fe/MnF$_2$ bilayers, using nuclear resonant scattering of synchrotron radiation from the $^{57}\text{Fe}$ probe layers [68]. These experiments revealed unexpected non-collinear spin structures in the ferromagnet perpendicular to the film orientation. And experiments on FM/AFM/FM multilayers precisely engineered to control the FM–FM interlayer exchange coupling, then treated with different magnetic cooling conditions, have demonstrated that details of the ordering in the bulk of the AFM influence the exchange bias [69]. These experiments also showed that the mechanism for coercivity enhancement has a different origin from that of the exchange bias.

Complementary to the improvements in film synthesis, new or improved characterization tools are also being employed to reveal new information. For example,
the direct imaging of domains in antiferromagnetic thin films is challenging, since domain sizes are often smaller than the detection limit for many experimental techniques. The study of the dynamics of AFM domain walls is even more challenging, but there is a clear need to correlate both the static AFM and FM domain structures and their evolution during the magnetization process. Here, the availability of high intensity X-ray and neutron sources, growing expertise in applying them to thin films, and (in the case of X-rays) the ability to tune photon energies to probe specific interfaces, are proving invaluable. For example, recent direct neutron measurements of the sizes of antiferromagnetic domains in FM/AFM bilayers as a function of the magnitude and sign of exchange bias, temperature, and antiferromagnet composition have found the AFM domain size to be consistently small regardless of the exchange bias and the material type [70]. Optical techniques are also useful. For example, the magneto-optic Kerr effect (see Chapter 16) is now being used to characterize the switching process in exchange-biased systems, since it allows the simultaneous observation of both longitudinal and transverse magnetization components [71]. The high intensities now available with synchrotron radiation allow for higher resolution and element-specific studies. This tool has been useful in elucidating the origin of the asymmetry of the observed hysteresis loops, which is now believed to arise from different magnetization processes (domain-wall motion or magnetization rotation) occurring on either side. Finally, it is possible that modern electronic structure calculations, which are able to calculate changes in energy for different constrained spin arrangements in the presence of finite magnetic fields, might begin to contribute considerably to fundamental understanding in the near future. In particular, it is well established that exchange bias is smaller in well-prepared thin-film multilayers than in polycrystalline samples, suggesting an important role for defects. Since first-principles computations are usually applied to ideal, defect-free systems, they might be helpful in elucidating the influence of defects on both anisotropy and increased coercivity.

14.2 Exchange anisotropy in technology

The phenomenon of exchange anisotropy was exploited starting in the 1970s in anisotropic magnetoresistive recording heads, where it was used to tune the state of the read head to the point of highest sensitivity; this is the origin of the term “exchange bias.” Today it is most widely used in spin valves to pin the orientation of the magnetization of a ferromagnetic reference layer (see Chapter 8). A second sensor layer is then reoriented relative to the reference layer by an external magnetic field and the resulting change in resistance used in sensing or storage applications.
Further reading

Excellent reviews of exchange bias and related effects, including a compilation of materials, experimental techniques for studying them, potential applications, size effects, and theoretical models, are given in [72] and [73].

It is also instructive (on many levels!) to read The Exchange Bias Manifesto written by I.K. Schuller and G. Guntherodt. At press time this was available at http://ischuller.ucsd.edu/doc/EBManifesto.pdf.
Part III

Device applications and novel materials
مرجع مهندسی مواد و مttlورژی

www.iran-mavad.com
15
Magnetic data storage

Today is the greatest new product day in the history of IBM and, I believe, in the history of the office equipment industry.

T.J. Watson, IBM press release announcing the 650 RAMAC computer, September 14, 1956

15.1 Introduction

The data storage industry is huge. Its revenue was tens of billions of U.S. dollars per year at the end of the 20th century, with hundreds of millions of disk, tape, optical, and floppy drives shipped annually. It is currently growing at an annual rate of about 25%, and the growth rate can only increase as the storing and sending of digital images and video becomes commonplace, with the phenomenal expansion of the world wide web and in ownership of personal computers and mobile computing platforms.

*Magnetic* data storage has been widely used over the last decades in such applications as audio tapes, video cassette recorders, computer hard disks, floppy disks, and credit cards, to name a few. Of all the magnetic storage technologies, magnetic hard-disk recording is currently the most widely used. In this chapter, our main focus will be on the technology and materials used in writing, storing, and retrieving data on magnetic hard disks. Along the way we will see how some of the phenomena that we discussed in Part II, such as magnetoresistance and single-domain magnetism in small particles, play an important role in storage technologies.

RAMAC, the first computer containing a hard-disk drive, was made by International Business Machines Corporation (IBM) in 1956. Its areal density (the number of bits per unit area of disk surface) was 2000 bit/in$^2$, and the rate at which data were read or written was 70 kbit/s. Fifty 24-inch diameter disks were needed to...
hold 5 megabytes (MB) of data – roughly equivalent to one medium-resolution
digital photograph today – and the size was similar to that of a large refrigerator.
The cost was around $100,000 (or $20 per MB), and in fact storage space was often
leased rather than purchased.

Even since the first edition of this book was published, the developments have
been astonishing. In 2002 three or four 2.5-inch hard disks held 60 gigabytes (GB)
of data, at a cost of around $100 (close to 1 cent per MB). And for the portable
electronics market, IBM offered a 1 GB Microdrive™, which was smaller than a
matchbook, weighed less than an ounce, and cost less than $500; see Fig. 15.1. Its
areal density was 15 Gbit/in², with an improvement in data transfer rate of more
than three orders of magnitude over the original RAMAC.

At press time (2009), $100 will purchase a 1 terabyte (TB) drive for a desktop
workstation such as the Seagate Barracuda®, which has an areal density of 329
GB/in² and the additional design constraint of sharply reduced energy consumption.
(Remember that 1 TB = 10¹² bytes or 1000 GB!)

These huge decreases in cost per megabyte have been fueled in part by market
forces – higher-volume production and stiffer competition both lead to reduced
costs – but also by improvements in materials. In particular, continually increasing
areal densities allow more data to be stored for the same packaging and processing
effort, and costs are reduced proportionally. The trend in areal density between
1985 and 2005 is shown in Fig. 15.2, along with the development of one specific
component – the read element in the recording head – that facilitated the increase.
Areal density, Gbit/in²

Figure 15.2 Increase in areal density (log scale) between 1985 and 2005. The inserts show schematics of the recording heads at each time point, and list the material used in the reading operation. Courtesy of International Business Machines Corporation. Reproduced with permission. Unauthorized use not permitted.

A photograph of the inside of a hard-disk drive is shown in Fig. 15.3, and schematics are shown in Fig. 15.4. The system consists of three main components. The storage medium is the tape or disk in which the data are actually stored, in the form of small magnetized areas. In the photograph in Fig. 15.3 this is the large silver-colored disk; in the schematics it is shown in rectangular cross-section. Traditionally, the magnetization lay in the plane of the disk (longitudinal recording), although there has recently been a switch to a perpendicular geometry, with the magnetization pointing into or out of the disk plane. The write head consists of a wire coil wound around a magnetic material which generates a magnetic field (by electromagnetic induction) when current flows through the coil. This magnetic field writes the data by magnetizing the small data bits in the medium. Finally, the read head senses the recorded magnetized areas, using the phenomenon of magnetoresistance – that is, the change in resistance of a material when a magnetic field is applied – that we introduced in Chapter 13. In the photograph, the read and write components are located in the recording head, at the end of the
Figure 15.3 The inside of a hard-disk drive. Copyright 1998–2002 Seagate Technology. Reproduced with permission.

Figure 15.4 Schematics showing the key components and arrangements of hard-disk drives. The magnetized data bits (arrows) are contained in the media on the disk, and the read and write components are in the recording head, which swings over the disk on a finely controlled arm. Above: the traditional longitudinal recording geometry is shown; below: the modern perpendicular geometry.
15.2 Magnetic media

The disk in a hard-disk drive consists of four components – a substrate, an underlayer, the magnetic layers where the data are actually stored, and a protective overcoat. Although the material properties of all the layers are relevant in determining the performance of the media, we will focus on the magnetic layer, since it is the most relevant in our study of magnetic materials.

A primary requirement for the magnetic material used in the media is that it should have a large, square hysteresis loop. Large loops occur in materials with large permeabilities and large coercivities. A large permeability is desirable because it results in strong lines of flux around each stored data bit, making the bits easier to detect. A large coercivity allows for permanent, stable storage. The square shape means that there are two distinct stable magnetization states, and that the magnetization reversal takes place at a well-defined field strength.

In magnetic media, the square hysteresis loop is achieved by the use of small, single-domain magnetic particles, which, as we discussed in Chapter 12, have characteristically large coercivities and well-defined switching between magnetization directions, resulting in square hysteresis loops.

15.2.1 Materials used in magnetic media

Historically, the desired single-domain behavior was achieved in so-called particulate media, consisting of small, needle-like particles of, for example, iron ferrite, γ-Fe₂O₃, or chromium oxide, CrO₂, bonded to a metal or polymer disk. The needles were aligned by a magnetic field during manufacture, with their long axes parallel to the direction of motion past the read/write head. Each particle contained a single domain that magnetized only with its moment aligned along the long axis (because of the shape anisotropy). Each recorded bit was made up of many of these...
particles, with the two binary data storage states corresponding to (1) a change in magnetization between adjacent regions, and (0) no change in magnetization direction.

Iron oxide particles were very widely used because iron oxide is chemically stable, pollution-free, and inexpensive. $\gamma$-Fe$_2$O$_3$ and Fe$_3$O$_4$ can be easily prepared by dehydration, oxidation, or reduction of acicular $\alpha$-FeOOH, resulting in needle-like particles 0.3–0.7 $\mu$m long and $\sim$0.05 $\mu$m in diameter. A higher $H_c$ could be obtained using Co-modified iron oxide particles, consisting of a core of Fe$_3$O$_4$ coated epitaxially with cobalt ferrite.

A problem with particulate media was the disruption of the homogeneous distribution of particles with voids, which resulted in less uniform orientation and a lower coercivity. In the next generation of thin-film media, nanometer-sized grains which form spontaneously during the film growth process play the role of the small particles. This arrangement allows for higher storage density than was possible in particulate media because the packing efficiency is much higher. Thin-film media consist of approximately 10–50 nm thick polycrystalline magnetic alloys such as CoPtCr or CoCrTa deposited on a substrate. The primary magnetic component is the Co, and the purpose of the Pt or Ta is to increase the coercivity by increasing the anisotropy. The Cr segregates to the grain boundaries and so reduces the drop in coercivity caused by the undesirable inter-particle exchange that we discussed in Chapter 12. In early thin-film media, in which the magnetization lay in the plane of the disk (the longitudinal recording geometry), the crystallographic direction of easy magnetization was aligned along the direction of the disk motion. In modern perpendicular recording systems, it is more desirable for the easy axis to be perpendicular to the plane of the disk. Typical coercive fields are around 3000 Oe.

In spite of their desirable hysteresis properties, there are two problems associated with using small particles or grains for the magnetic media in storage devices. The first is the detrimental effect of inter-particle interactions, and the second is the reduction in coercivity – superparamagnetism – which occurs at very small particle sizes. We discussed the physics underlying both concepts in detail in Chapter 12. Since the inter-particle interactions increase with packing density, the push to higher-density recording requires isolation of the particles, for example by precipitation of non-magnetic material along the boundaries of the magnetic grains. The superparamagnetic limit can be pushed by using higher-coercivity material, and this was a driving force in the switch to the use of the perpendicular recording architecture, shown schematically in Fig. 15.4. In the perpendicular recording architecture the magnetic component of the hard disk also contains a soft magnetic underlayer of Cr. The Cr underlayer couples to the write head producing a stronger field gradient for the same write head material and enabling writing in
higher-coercivity media. With higher coercivity, smaller grain sizes can be tolerated before the superparamagnetic limit is reached; this in turn increases the areal density roughly three-fold over traditional longitudinal architectures. The down-side is that the disk structure is now both more complicated and thicker (and therefore heavier). For a fun exposition of perpendicular recording, with a catchy tune that you will struggle to get out of your head, visit http://www.hitachigst.com/hdd/research/ and search the website for “get perpendicular.”

15.2.2 The other components of magnetic hard disks

In addition to the magnetic layer, magnetic hard disks also contain a substrate, an underlayer, and an overcoat. The requirements for the substrate layer are high hardness and low density for shock resistance (this is particularly important in laptop computers), high modulus for reduced vibration, good thermal stability for stability during processing, absence of defects, and low cost. Traditionally an Al–Mg alloy plated with \( \sim 10 \, \mu m \) of NiP was used, but more recently there has been a transition to glass substrates. The choice of substrate greatly affects the subsequent processing and performance of the disk. For example, the nucleation and growth of the underlayer are different on glass than on NiP, which in turn affects the grain size and crystallographic orientation of the magnetic layer.

In longitudinal recording, the purpose of the underlayer was to control the crystallographic orientation and grain size of the magnetic layer, to promote adhesion, to protect the substrate from corrosion, and to physically isolate the magnetic grains from each other, in order to prevent the problems with inter-particle interactions referred to above. In perpendicular recording a much thicker underlayer is used, to serve the additional function of guiding the magnetic flux from the write head. The material of choice for the underlayer is chromium, or Cr alloys such as CrV which improve the lattice matching between the underlayer and the magnetic layer.

Finally, the overcoat serves to prevent wear of the magnetic layer and subsequent data loss during contact with the head. It also provides a low-friction interface between the magnetic layer and the head. The material of choice is a few nm of amorphous three-dimensional C:H film covered by a monolayer lubricant of a polymer such as perfluoropolyether, which also resists absorption of contaminants.

15.3 Write heads

In magnetic hard disks, writing is achieved by the process of electromagnetic induction. A magnetic field produced by a current circulating in the write head
intersects with the media and magnetizes it, creating a data bit. A schematic of a traditional write head is shown in Fig. 15.5.

The purpose of the magnetic material around which the wire is wound is to concentrate the magnetic flux generated by the current passing through the wire. The gap between the write poles (which can also be filled with a different metallic material) allows some of the flux to leak out, creating “fringing fields” which actually magnetize the media. In heads for perpendicular recording, the field generated perpendicular to the main pole is used, and a shield is positioned at the trailing edge to absorb stray field and create the sharp write field needed for the smaller bit cross-section.

The magnetic material in the write head should have a large permeability, so that large magnetic fields are generated, and a low coercivity, so that its direction of magnetization can be easily reversed. Traditionally, write heads were made of cubic ferrites, which are magnetically soft and therefore easily magnetized. However, the saturation magnetizations are not large, so strong magnetic fields cannot be generated. In modern heads, metals such as permalloy, which has a higher saturation flux density, are used. The higher saturation flux density facilitates writing in higher-coercivity media, and allows for narrower track widths and in turn a higher storage density. However, modern data rates are so high that eddy currents are induced in metal heads, which limit the operation frequency. Therefore, there is a move to laminated thin-film heads of, for example, FeAlN, in which the eddy currents are suppressed, allowing for an improved high-frequency response. FeAlN thin films are soft, with a coercivity of less than 1 Oe, they have a saturation magnetization of
20 kG and a permeability of 3400, with approximately zero magnetostriction. New materials with even higher permeabilities and higher resistivities, such as CoZrCr, are being explored for future higher density and faster data rate applications.

15.4 Read heads

In the past, the same inductive component that performs the write operation was also used for the read head. This had the obvious advantage of reducing the number of components contained within the recording head. However, the fields emanating from a stored data bit are small; therefore the signals generated in the read head using electromagnetic induction were correspondingly weak. Today a separate component, which is based on the phenomenon of magnetoresistance rather than magnetic induction, is used to detect the stored data bit.

From about 1993 until the late 1990s, anisotropic magnetoresistive (AMR) materials were used almost exclusively as the read elements in recording heads. A typical AMR head design, the so-called dual-stripe recording head, is shown in Fig. 15.6. The current flowed from the current leads (light gray) along the lengths of the AMR bars (black), which were separated by a thin dielectric layer (speckled). The dark-gray bars are shields to reduce the effects of stray fields. The dual-stripe design utilized the transverse magnetoresistance, with the current running perpendicular to the field. The magnetic fields generated by the current in one stripe bias the other stripe, and vice versa, resulting in a linear signal.

The magnetoresistive component in modern read heads operates on the giant magnetoresistive (GMR) effect that we discussed in Chapter 13. While early
measurements on GMR multilayers suggested that large fields, of the order of tens of kilogauss, were required to overcome the antiferromagnetic coupling and rotate the magnetization to the ferromagnetic orientation, novel architectures have been developed in which films can be switched from antiferromagnetic to ferromagnetic at much lower fields. One example is the so-called *spin valve*, which has a typical magnetoresistance of the order of tens of percent in fields of tens of oersteds. Spin valves also have a uniform field response, which makes them appealing for use as the sensors in recording heads.

In spin valves, two magnetic layers are separated by a non-magnetic spacer layer, as shown in Fig. 15.7. One of the magnetic layers has its magnetization direction pinned, using exchange-bias coupling, to an adjacent antiferromagnetic layer. The lower magnetic layer is free to switch back and forth in the presence of an applied magnetic field. Just as in GMR multilayers, spin-dependent scattering gives a low-resistance state when the magnetic layers are ferromagnetically aligned, and a high-resistance state in the antiferromagnetic configuration.

A comparison of the magnetoresistance obtained from AMR and GMR spin-valve heads is shown in Fig. 15.8. Note that the magnitude of the magnetoresistance is considerably larger in the GMR spin valve. Also we see that the hysteresis loop is shifted, as we explained in our discussion of exchange-bias coupling in Chapter 14.

### 15.5 Future of magnetic data storage

The decrease in cost per bit discussed in Section 15.1 has been possible in large part because of a simultaneous increase in areal density. Therefore, maintaining or improving existing areal density trends into the future is a high priority for disk-drive manufacturers. In this section we outline some of the anticipated problems associated with a continued increase in areal density, and some solutions that are being explored to overcome them. A more detailed review of the future of magnetic data storage technology can be found in [74].
15.5 *Future of magnetic data storage*

There are three primary impediments to the continuation of the trends shown in Fig. 15.2. The first two, the superparamagnetic limit, which we discussed in Section 12.1, and fundamental limitations in switching speed, result from the fact that the electrical and magnetic properties change as we scale down in size. A third obstacle, the reduction in head-to-disk spacing down to atomic dimensions, results from an incompatibility between further miniaturization and existing device architectures. Therefore, the evolution of magnetic storage devices will undoubtedly, at least in the near term, follow two pathways – continued optimization of current disk design, which is in fact remarkably similar to the original hard disks of the 1950s, and the development of new recording architectures.

Currently each data bit needs to contain a few hundred magnetic particles; otherwise the signal-to-noise ratio for bit detection becomes unacceptable. Therefore, as the bit size is decreased, the particle size must decrease correspondingly. As we discussed earlier, below a certain critical size a magnetized particle can spontaneously switch magnetization direction, as the thermal energy exceeds the anisotropy energy pinning the magnetization in place. One option for achieving higher areal densities rests on the fact that the signal-to-noise ratio actually scales as the perimeter length of the bit, and so is determined by the aspect ratio as well as the surface area; this is an obvious advantage of the perpendicular recording architecture, in which the aspect ratio can be increased without affecting the surface area or requiring narrower tracks, which are more prone to interference with their neighbors. A second option is the development of better error-correcting codes, which will allow lower signal-to-noise ratios to be tolerated.

A quite different avenue for exploration is the formation of media with only one magnetic grain per bit cell. An active research area for possible future magnetic media is the use of patterned media, in which the magnetic layer is created as

---

**Figure 15.8** Comparison of the magnetoresistance in AMR and GMR spin-valve heads.

![Diagram showing comparison of AMR and GMR spin-valve heads with a graph of Resistance change (%) against $H$ (Oe).](figure.png)
Magnetic data storage

an ordered array of photolithographically created, highly uniform islands, each of which can store an individual bit; this has the disadvantage of being expensive. A second option is chemical synthesis of monodisperse magnetic nanoparticles, which is cheaper but challenging [75]. An additional increase in areal density of at least an order of magnitude could be expected.

In terms of marketability, the next factor after cost and capacity is data rate. The data rate is in turn determined by the speed at which the head is able to switch the bits in the media. Magnetic switching times of \( \sim 10 \) ns are now state-of-the-art, and below this the magnetic properties of both heads and media start to change significantly. For example, at higher switching rates even modern laminated heads are prone to the formation of eddy currents. A more fundamental limitation is that bits in the media take a few nanoseconds to flip once the field is applied, since the flipping process depends on damping of the precession induced by the applied field. The problem is compounded as the particle size approaches the superparamagnetic limit and the bits become less stable.

In conclusion, in spite of some fundamental physical difficulties, increasing trends in areal density and consequent cost reductions in magnetic data storage are likely to continue for the immediate future.

Further reading


www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژی
We are in great haste to construct a magnetic telegraph from Maine to Texas; but Maine and Texas, it may be, have nothing important to communicate.

Henry David Thoreau,
*The Writings of Henry D. Thoreau, vol. 2*, 1906

We begin this chapter with a discussion of the physics behind a phenomenon known as the *magneto-optic* (MO) effect, which, as its name implies, concerns the interaction of light with magnetic materials. Then we describe both the mechanism and the materials used in one specific application of magneto-optics – that of magneto-optic data storage.

### 16.1 Magneto-optics basics

The term “magneto-optics” refers to the various phenomena which occur when electromagnetic radiation interacts with magnetically polarized materials. Here we describe two important and related magneto-optic phenomena, the Kerr effect and the Faraday effect.

#### 16.1.1 Kerr effect

The Kerr effect is the rotation of the plane of polarization of a light beam during *reflection* from a magnetized sample. For most materials the amount of rotation is small (of the order of tenths of a degree) and depends on both the direction and the magnitude of the magnetization. The Kerr effect can be used in the observation of magnetic domains, as shown schematically in Fig. 16.1.

Radiation from a light source is first passed through a polarizer. The resulting plane-polarized light is then incident on a sample which, in our example, contains...
two domains magnetized in opposite directions. The light incident on one domain is rotated in the opposite direction from that incident on the other domain. Therefore if the analyzer is oriented such that the light reflected from the first domain is 100% transmitted, then the plane of polarization of the light reflected from the other domain is not aligned with the analyzer, and the transmittance is reduced.

Two different examples of images recorded using the magneto-optic Kerr effect are shown in Figs. 16.2 and 16.3. Figure 16.2 shows a Kerr microscope image of magnetic domains in an 8 μm-wide stripe of NiFe thin film. The NiFe thin film, labeled “MR stripe” in the figure, is the sensor in a magnetoresistive device. The current leads are used to measure the field-dependent resistivity of the MR
Figure 16.3  Kerr microscope image of domain structure in an yttrium–iron garnet film. Each stripe is \( \sim 5 \mu m \) wide. Reproduced by permission of Tom Silva, National Institute of Standards and Technology, Boulder, CO.

stripe. For optimum performance, the magnetic element should remain in a single-domain state. This picture shows a device which was intentionally prepared in a three-domain state by application of an external magnetic field.

Figure 16.3 shows a Kerr microscope image of magnetic domains in a film of yttrium–iron garnet (YIG). The magnetization of the film is oriented perpendicular to the film plane. To lower its magnetostatic energy, the film breaks up into this domain pattern, which is known as the serpentine domain structure. Each stripe is \( \sim 5 \mu m \) in width. Kerr microscopy is a powerful means of readily imaging domain patterns in films at the relatively low resolution of \( \sim 1 \mu m \).

16.1.2 Faraday effect

In the Faraday effect, the plane of polarization of the light beam is rotated as it is transmitted through a magnetized sample. In this case the amount of rotation can be several degrees, since the radiation interacts more strongly with the sample than in the Kerr effect. However, light is only transmitted for thin samples with low attenuation, and so the Faraday effect cannot be used to study bulk samples.

16.1.3 Physical origin of magneto-optic effects

To explain the physics causing Kerr and Faraday rotation, we first need to know that linearly polarized light can be resolved into two oppositely polarized circular polarizations:

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مطالعاتی
All photons in circularly polarized beams have the same magnitude of angular momentum (equal to 1) but the angular momentum vector of right circularly polarized light is in the opposite direction to that of left circularly polarized light.

As we discussed in Section 3.3, the magnetization of a magnetic material can cause a Zeeman splitting of the energy levels. For example, if the atomic spin is $\frac{1}{2}$, then each level splits into two levels, with total spin $S = +\frac{1}{2}$ and $S = -\frac{1}{2}$, respectively:

Both energy and angular momentum must be conserved when a photon excites an electron from one of the sub-levels of level B to one of the sub-levels of level A. Therefore, in order to conserve angular momentum, only the following transitions are allowed:

$S_B = -\frac{1}{2} \rightarrow S_A = +\frac{1}{2}$ with $\Delta L = +1$

$S_B = +\frac{1}{2} \rightarrow S_A = -\frac{1}{2}$ with $\Delta L = -1$.

The photon with $\Delta L = +1$ excites an electron from the $S = -\frac{1}{2}$ state in level B to the $S = +\frac{1}{2}$ state in level A. Similarly the photon with $\Delta L = -1$ excites an electron from the $S = +\frac{1}{2}$ state in level B to the $S = -\frac{1}{2}$ state in level A. So, oppositely polarized photons correspond to different electronic transitions in the atom.

Finally, in level B the electronic populations of the two spin states differ one from the other, with the lower-energy state containing statistically more electrons. As a result, the absorption of one of the circular polarizations is greater than that of the other; this phenomenon is known as circular dichroism. When the final circular polarizations are recombined into a linearly polarized beam, the plane of polarization is seen to be rotated compared with that of the incoming beam. The resulting phase difference between the initial and final planes of polarization is called the circular birefringence.
16.2 Magneto-optic recording

Magneto-optic recording combines the advantages of high-density magnetic data storage, which were discussed in Chapter 15, with the reduced friction and wear characteristic of conventional optical memories. It also has the additional advantage of being erasable and re-recordable. The principles of magneto-optic recording are illustrated in Fig. 16.4.

Before the recording process begins, the magnetization of the entire magnetic film points in the same direction (down, say). The area to be written is then heated with a laser to a temperature above the Curie temperature. Then, as the heated area cools, it is magnetized in the opposite direction, either by an applied field, or by the demagnetizing field from the rest of the film. This oppositely magnetized part of the film forms a data bit. The read process uses the Kerr effect with plane-polarized light. If the polarization plane rotates by $+\theta_K$ for upward magnetization, then it must rotate by $-\theta_K$ for downward magnetization. The data can be erased by heating the area with a laser, in the presence of a magnetic field applied in the same direction as the initial magnetization.

The materials requirements on the magneto-optic storage layer are quite stringent. Clearly the magnetic layer must be magneto-optically active so that read-out can be achieved using the Kerr effect. A perpendicular uniaxial magnetic anisotropy constant is desirable since it allows for stable micrometer-sized domains. The Curie temperature should be 400–600 K – not so high that the laser is unable to heat the material to temperatures above $T_C$, but not so low that the material is thermally unstable. Both the coercivity and the magnetization should have rather specific temperature dependence. First, $H_c$ needs to be low when zapped with the laser (so that the magnetization can be reversed easily) and high the rest of the time (so that the magnetization doesn’t reverse spontaneously). Therefore the $H_c(T)$ curve needs to be steep. The magnetization has the opposite constraints on its temperature dependence – it should be high when zapped with the laser (so that there is a large demagnetizing field to reverse the bit) and low the rest of the time (so that
there is a low demagnetizing field when spontaneous magnetization reversal is undesirable). Additional requirements are a fine-grained or amorphous microstructure and good lateral homogeneity, long-term stability, sensitivity, low media noise, and (of course) cheap production.

Good candidate magneto-optic storage media materials are amorphous rare-earth–transition-metal alloys. Amorphous films are desirable because the noise is low (since there are no grain boundaries) and because the films are easily deposited by sputtering, giving high yields and low cost. Also, no post-deposition annealing is required. Perhaps most importantly, the rare-earth–transition-metal alloys are ferrimagnetic, and therefore have a compensation point, as described in Section 9.1.2.

Typical curves of magnetization versus temperature for a representative rare-earth–transition-metal alloy such as Gd–Fe are shown in Fig. 16.5. Below the compensation temperature, the magnetization of the Gd sublattice is larger than that of the iron sublattice, and so the Gd magnetization lies parallel to the applied field. At the compensation temperature, \( T_{\text{comp}} \), the magnetizations of the two sublattices are equal by definition. At higher temperatures the magnetization of the Fe sublattice is largest, and lies parallel to any applied field. Close to \( T_{\text{comp}} \) the magnetization is small, and the demagnetizing field is small. Also, the coercivity is very large, since the magnetization is zero, and so an applied field has no handle to reverse the spin system. As a result the recorded bit is very stable. However, heating

---

**Figure 16.5** Magnetization curve for a Gd–Fe alloy.
to just a few degrees above the compensation temperature gives a large reduction in $H_c$, as shown in the typical $H_c$ versus temperature plot in Fig. 16.6. Therefore the data bits can be recorded easily. Finally, the magneto-optic Kerr rotation comes mainly from the transition-metal sublattice, and so it does not show what would be an undesirable singular behavior at the compensation temperature.

An additional advantage of the rare-earth–transition-metal system is that alloying can be used to tune both $T_C$ and $T_{\text{comp}}$ over fairly wide temperature ranges. However, the reverse is also true – $T_{\text{comp}}$ is strongly dependent on composition, and therefore films need to be uniform if they rely on the properties of the material near the compensation temperature for the write process. Another down-side is the strong chemical reactivity of the rare earths, particularly in the amorphous phase.

It has been found empirically that ternary alloys have a larger Kerr rotation than the simple binary alloys. In particular, TbFeCo is a suitable material because of its large Kerr rotation, large coercivity, and $T_C$ in the range which is appropriate for recording using semiconductor lasers. Unfortunately the Kerr rotation in TbFeCo alloys decreases as the wavelength of the laser decreases, and so the material does not perform well at the short wavelengths required for high-density recording. (The diameter of the laser spot decreases as the wavelength decreases, allowing smaller and hence more data bits to be written.) Instead, NdFeCo has been proposed for future use at shorter wavelength, since its Kerr rotation increases with decreasing wavelength down to around 400 nm. Other potential magneto-optic storage materials are Pt–Co multilayers (which have strong perpendicular anisotropy, high coercivity, and high Kerr rotation at blue wavelengths, but high $T_C$ and high $M_s$) and BiFe garnets (which have the largest magneto-optic signal and are chemically
very stable, but have a low signal-to-noise ratio and an undesirably high crystallization temperature, which limits the choice of substrate). A concise review of these new magneto-optic recording materials can be found in [77]. For a comprehensive discussion, see the book by Gambino and Suzuki [78].

16.2.1 Other types of optical storage, and the future of magneto-optic recording

The magneto-optic drive was traditionally a popular way to back up files, both on personal computers and for industrial archiving. The chief assets of MO drives include convenience, modest cost, reliability, and removability. The main limitations are that MO drives are slower than hard-disk drives and, with recent drops in hard-disk drive prices, they can also be more expensive. In addition, the emerging popularity of other optical storage media, including compact disks (CDs) and digital video disks (DVDs), threatens the future of MO storage.

Both CDs and DVDs are safe and reliable media that can provide long-term removable storage for music, data, and images. The data bits are structural “bumps” which are indented cheaply during processing, and no specialized hardware or software is required to read or write the information. The drawback with CDs is their limited storage capacity: A standard CD can store up to around 74 minutes of music. (However, disks can be stored in jukeboxes that can hold 500 CDs at a time.) DVDs are similar in design to CDs but hold around seven times more data; the additional storage capacity allows them to store full-length movies as well as additional information. Since DVDs offer the same storage capacity as MO devices, they have largely displaced MO drives for cheap, reliable, non-volatile data storage, except in niche applications.

Further reading

In this chapter we continue our survey of magnetic phenomena with a look at magnetism in magnetic semiconductors and insulators. A large practical motivation for the study of magnetic semiconductors is their potential for combining semiconducting and magnetic behavior in a single material system. Such a combination will facilitate the integration of magnetic components into existing semiconducting processing methods, and also provide compatible semiconductor–ferromagnet interfaces. As a result, diluted magnetic semiconductors are viewed as enabling materials for the emerging field of magnetoelectronic devices and technology. Because such devices exploit the fact that the electron has spin as well as charge, they have become known as spintronic devices, and their study is known as spintronics. In addition to their potential technological interest, the study of magnetic semiconductors is revealing a wealth of new and fascinating physical phenomena, including persistent spin coherence, novel ferromagnetism, and spin-polarized photoluminescence.

We will focus on the so-called diluted magnetic semiconductors (DMSs), in which some of the cations, which are non-magnetic in conventional semiconductors (Fig. 17.1 left panel), are replaced by magnetic transition-metal ions (Fig. 17.1 center panel). We will survey three classes of DMSs. First are the II–VI diluted magnetic semiconductors, of which the prototype is (Zn,Mn)Se, which have been studied quite extensively over the last decade or so. Second is the fairly new class of III–V diluted magnetic semiconductors, which have generated great recent excitement following the observation of ferromagnetism in (Ga,Mn)As. Here we
Magnetic semiconductors and insulators

Figure 17.1 Schematic of a non-magnetic semiconductor or insulator (left) consisting of non-magnetic cations and anions; a diluted magnetic semiconductor (center) in which some of the non-magnetic cations have been replaced by magnetic cations; and a magnetic insulator (right) in which the magnetic cations form an ordered crystalline array.

will also mention some rare-earth–group-V compounds, particularly ErAs, which can be grown compatibly with GaAs and show interesting properties associated with f-electron magnetism. Third, we will summarize the status of the field of oxide-based diluted magnetic semiconductors, which have generated considerable recent excitement as well as some controversy, as seemingly similar samples yield conflicting results.

The research interest in the field of spin-based electronics has generated general interest in multifunctional materials that combine ferromagnetism with additional desirable properties, such as semiconducting transport or large magneto-optic response. In the later part of this chapter we discuss the particularly challenging task of combining ferromagnetism with insulating behavior. In addition to having potential spintronic applications, strong insulation is also a prerequisite for the multiferroics – materials with simultaneous ferroelectric and magnetic order – that we discuss in the next chapter. The established ferromagnetic insulators have ordered arrays of magnetic cations and anions, as shown in the right panel of Fig. 17.1.

This chapter is included in part to introduce magnetic materials that are at the cutting edge of current research. As such, many questions will be left unanswered, and some of the material may seem dated or irrelevant in a few years’ time. But we may learn something about how research and technology evolve, and we will have some fun finding out about these fascinating classes of materials.

17.1 Exchange interactions in magnetic semiconductors and insulators

Before we describe specific materials, let’s start by reviewing the different types of interactions that occur between magnetic ions in diluted magnetic semiconductors
17.1 Exchange interactions in magnetic semiconductors and insulators

and insulators. We have introduced most of these earlier in this book, but we will refer to them often in this chapter, so it will be helpful to summarize them here. Some, such as the double-exchange interaction, exclusively promote ferromagnetism, whereas others can result in either ferro- or antiferromagnetic interactions, depending on the details of the chemical bonding, geometry, defect structure, and/or carrier concentration. We follow the discussion in [79].

17.1.1 Direct exchange and superexchange

Direct exchange. The direct-exchange interaction coupling the spins, \( s_i \), of localized electrons in insulators can be described by the model Heisenberg Hamiltonian [80, 81]:

\[
H_{\text{ex}} = - \sum_{ij} J_{ij} s_i \cdot s_j .
\]

In Chapter 6 we showed that if the two states of interest are electronic states in a free atom, then the exchange integral, \( J_{ij} \), that couples them is positive and the spins align parallel, as reflected in Hund’s rules. If the interaction takes place between electrons localized on different neighboring atoms, \( J_{ij} \) tends to be negative; this corresponds to the situation in which two electrons align antiparallel to form a covalent bonding state. The direct-exchange interaction falls off rapidly with distance, so that the interaction between further neighbors is effectively zero.

Superexchange. In many transition-metal oxides and related materials, magnetic interactions between the transition-metal ions are mediated by the intermediate anions. Such anion-mediated magnetic coupling is known as superexchange; we discussed this in Chapter 8 to explain the antiferromagnetism in MnO, in Chapter 9 in the context of the ferrites, and in Chapter 13 to understand the behavior of the colossal magnetoresistive manganites. Superexchange can also be described by a Heisenberg Hamiltonian, in which the sign of \( J_{ij} \) is determined by the metal–oxygen–metal bond angle and the d electron configuration on the transition metal. These dependencies are articulated in the semi-empirical Goodenough–Kanamori–Anderson rules (see, for example, [80]). Importantly for this chapter, 180° metal–oxygen–metal angles between identical metal ions with both orbitals either filled or empty lead to antiferromagnetic interactions; 90° angles, on the other hand, result in ferromagnetism.

17.1.2 Carrier-mediated exchange

The term “carrier-mediated exchange” refers to interactions between localized magnetic moments that are mediated by free carriers in the system. Below we describe
three limiting cases: the RKKY interaction, which we introduced in Chapter 8; Zener carrier-mediated exchange; and double exchange (also sometimes called Zener double exchange), which we discussed in Chapter 13 in the context of doped manganites. Most practical systems exhibit features of two or all of the models.

The Ruderman–Kittel–Kasuya–Yosida (RKKY) interaction (see, e.g., [82]) formally describes the magnetic exchange between a single localized magnetic moment and a free-electron gas. This system can be treated exactly quantum mechanically, and the sign of the exchange interaction, $J$, can be shown to oscillate with the distance from the localized moment, $R$, and with the density of electrons in the free-electron gas:

$$J(R) = \frac{m^* k_F^4}{\hbar^2} F(2k_F R),$$  \hspace{1cm} (17.2)

where $m^*$ is the effective mass and $k_F$ the Fermi wavevector of the electron gas, and the oscillating function $F(x) = \frac{x \cos x - \sin x}{x^4}$ was shown in Fig. 8.17.

In systems with both local magnetic moments and itinerant carriers (as in a doped extrinsic DMS), the carriers can mediate a ferromagnetic interaction between the local moments: so-called Zener carrier-mediated exchange [83, 84]. Let’s say that the interaction between a local moment and a carrier is antiferromagnetic; when the delocalized carrier encounters another local moment it will again couple antiferromagnetically, yielding an overall ferromagnetic alignment of the local moments.

Finally, the Zener double-exchange model that we discussed in Chapter 13 [66] explains the experimentally observed ferromagnetism in transition-metal oxides containing magnetic cations with two different valence states. In La$_{1-x}$Ca$_x$MnO$_3$, for example, with $0 < x < 1$, both Mn$^{4+}$ (with three 3d electrons) and Mn$^{3+}$ (with four 3d electrons) are present. The kinetic energy of the system is lowered if the magnetic moments align parallel, since parallel alignment allows electron transfer from Mn$^{3+}$ to Mn$^{4+}$. This indirect coupling is again mediated by the oxygen atoms between neighboring Mn$^{3+}$ and Mn$^{4+}$ ions, but is distinguished from superexchange by the involvement of carriers.

### 17.1.3 Bound magnetic polarons

The concept of bound magnetic polarons (BMPs) in connection with magnetic semiconductors was first introduced to explain the low-temperature metal–insulator transition in oxygen-deficient EuO [85]. In the BMP model, oxygen vacancies act both as electron donors and as electron traps, which can bind the electrons and maintain insulating behavior. Each trapped electron couples the local moments of...
the host lattice that lie within its orbit ferromagnetically, leading to a bound polaron with a large net magnetic moment. If neighboring polarons do not interact strongly, a paramagnetic, insulating phase results. However, for certain polaron–polaron distances and combinations of electron–electron and electron–local-moment exchange constants, the polarons couple ferromagnetically [86, 87]. The critical distance above which the exchange between two BMPs becomes ferromagnetic is typically of the order of a few Bohr radii [87]. The amplitude of the exchange interaction then drops off rapidly with distance. Above some critical electron density, the attractive potential of the vacancy is screened, the donor electrons become unbound, and the system becomes metallic [88].

### 17.2 II–VI diluted magnetic semiconductors – (Zn,Mn)Se

Bulk Mn chalcogenides crystallize in either the hexagonal NiAs structure (α-MnTe) or in the cubic NaCl structure (α-MnSe and α-MnS). Only MnS has been grown in the cubic zincblende structure (β-MnS) in bulk, but all Mn chalcogenides can be stabilized artificially in the zincblende structure by epitaxial growth, or by alloying with II–VI semiconductors [89]. The II–VI diluted magnetic semiconductors have been the subject of extensive experimental studies in the past and it has been established that the magnetic structure for sufficiently high manganese concentrations ($x_{\text{Mn}} > 0.6$ for (Zn,Mn)Se) is characterized by an antiferromagnetic correlation between the Mn$^{2+}$ ((3d)$^5$) magnetic moments. For intermediate manganese concentrations, spin-glass structures are found, and for low concentrations ($x_{\text{Mn}} < 0.3$ for (Zn,Mn)Se), a paramagnetic behavior of the uncorrelated Mn spins becomes dominant [90]. The paramagnetic regime is particularly interesting, since the strong interaction between the Mn d states and the sp bands of the host semiconductor gives rise to a hundred-fold increase in the effective g-factors [91]. The resulting properties include enhanced Zeeman splitting, spin precession and persistent spin coherence, spin-polarized luminescence, and spin-polarized transport. We discuss these phenomena in more detail below.

#### 17.2.1 Enhanced Zeeman splitting

When a magnetic field is applied to a semiconductor, the energy of electrons and holes with their spin magnetic moments parallel to the field is lowered, and that of the antiparallel electrons and holes is raised. The difference in energy between the electron–hole pairs of opposite spin polarization is known as the Zeeman splitting. The mechanism of the Zeeman effect in atoms was discussed in Section 3.3. In II–VI DMSs, the Mn$^{2+}$ ions become magnetized in the presence of an applied
magnetic field. Thus, in addition to the external field, the electrons and holes feel a large magnetization from the Mn$^{2+}$ ions. This results in a Zeeman splitting that can be hundreds of times larger than that in non-magnetic semiconductor quantum structures. This, in turn, results in a giant Faraday rotation, which means that II–VI DMSs have potential application as magneto-optic materials with large magneto-optic coefficients.

17.2.2 Persistent spin coherence

We’ve seen many times in this book that the spin of an electron is a two-level system whose degeneracy may be split by the application of a magnetic field. If the spins are oriented perpendicular to the magnetic field, and a quantum mechanical wavefunction is constructed which is a superposition of the two energy-split spin states, then the classical magnetization vector precesses about the applied magnetic field as the state evolves in time. While this Larmor precession is a classical effect, the underlying mechanism is quantum mechanical, and involves a change in the relative phases of the up-spin and down-spin components of the electron wavefunction. The magnetization vector will continue to precess indefinitely as long as there is no decoherence of the quantum mechanical wavefunction.

Similarly, any magnetic ion, such as a Mn$^{2+}$ ion in (Zn,Mn)Se, can be prepared in a state that precesses around an applied magnetic field. In DMSs this can be achieved using circularly polarized light to optically excite spin-polarized excitons. The spin-polarized excitons then couple to the manganese sublattice and transfer their spin polarization [92]. The manganese ions retain their spin polarization and precess around the applied field long after the exciton recombination time. Their coherent precession persists for several nanoseconds, even at high temperature, and can be measured using the Faraday rotation technique described in the previous chapter. Typical results are shown in Fig. 17.2.

One of the most promising applications of persistent spin coherence in magnetic semiconductors is in the field of quantum computing and quantum cryptography. Quantum computation is a fundamentally new mode of information processing that can be performed only by harnessing physical phenomena, particularly quantum interference, that are unique to quantum mechanics. In order to build a quantum computer, stable, long-lived quantum mechanical states which are coherent are required. The possibility of building a quantum computer in solid-state semiconductors is obviously attractive from a practical implementation point of view, particularly if it is operable at room temperature. The details of quantum computing are beyond the scope of this book. A number of good sources now exist for

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسی مواد و مترالورژی
17.2 II–VI diluted magnetic semiconductors – (Zn,Mn)Se

Figure 17.2 Coherent precession of the magnetization in II–VI DMSs measured using Faraday rotation, $\theta_F$. The upper panel shows the last few electron beats decaying to reveal the presence of the manganese beats. The lower panel shows an expanded view of the decay of the Mn$^{2+}$ precession. (3 × 1 ml = three one-monolayer regions of Mn-doped ZnSe; see text and Figs. 17.3 and 17.4.) From [93]. Copyright 1997 the American Physical Society. Reproduced with permission.

Learning more about it; in particular, the textbook by Nielsen and Chuang [94] is an excellent reference.

17.2.3 Spin-polarized transport

A characteristic of the transport in two-dimensional electron gases (2DEGs) formed in non-magnetic doped semiconductors is the so-called integer quantum Hall effect, in which the application of a magnetic field perpendicular to the 2DEG plane results in a vanishing longitudinal resistance and a quantized Hall resistance. In magnetic 2DEGs, as a result of the enhanced spin-splitting, the energy levels involved in quantum transport are completely spin-resolved, even at high temperature [95]. A magnetoresistance is observed, which is positive at low fields (indicating an

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالتورژی
17.2.4 Other architectures

It is also possible (see Fig. 17.3) to grow so-called digital magnetic heterostructures (DMHs) of Mn-doped ZnSe using molecular beam epitaxy [96]. In DMHs, the Mn$^{2+}$ ions are constrained to occupy monolayers (or sub-monolayers) within a ZnSe/ZnCdSe quantum well, as shown in Fig. 17.4. This arrangement both minimizes the tendency of the Mn$^{2+}$ ions to cluster antiferromagnetically, allowing them to respond to an applied magnetic field, and increases the overlap of the electronic wavefunction with the magnetic ions, also shown in Fig. 17.4. Many properties of the II–VI DMHs are superior to those of the corresponding DMSs as a result of this enhanced overlap between the carrier wavefunctions and the localized magnetic moments.

17.3 III–V diluted magnetic semiconductors – (Ga,Mn)As

The III–V diluted magnetic semiconductors are the subject of intense current research interest, both because they are ferromagnetic to fairly high temperature
and because of their compatibility with existing III–V-based technology. The III–V DMSs are obtained by low-temperature molecular beam epitaxy co-deposition of III–V semiconductors with a transition metal such as Mn. The low-temperature non-equilibrium growth is necessary to prevent the formation of additional phases, and in general only low concentrations (typically around $10^{18} \text{cm}^{-3}$, or a few percent) of transition-metal ions can be incorporated in the non-magnetic matrix. Nevertheless, despite the low concentrations, the systems develop long-range ferromagnetic order with remarkably high Curie temperatures, $T_C$. For the known III–V-based DMSs the highest consistently reproducible Curie temperatures obtained are: $T_C \sim 30 \text{ K}$ for (In,Mn)As [97] and $T_C = 110 \text{ K}$ for (Ga,Mn)As [97]. There have also been recent unconfirmed reports of $T_C \approx 940 \text{ K}$ for (Ga,Mn)N [98]. More extensive reviews of the properties and potential applications of III–V DMSs can be found in [97] and [99]; here we emphasize a few key points.

Three important features underlie the ferromagnetic order of (Ga,Mn)As and other Mn-doped III–V DMSs: (i) Mn$^{2+}$ ions substitute for the Ga$^{3+}$ cations in the zincblende lattice, providing localized magnetic moments ($S = 5/2$); (ii) there are free holes in the system, although the actual concentration is much smaller than the Mn concentration (despite the fact that the nominal valence suggests that the two concentrations should be identical); and (iii) the hole spins couple antiferromagnetically with the Mn spins. Curie temperatures have been shown to correlate with the hole concentration – a schematic of typical data is shown in Fig. 17.5.

The most widely accepted explanation of ferromagnetism in III–V DMSs is that the localized Mn d electrons which form the Mn magnetic moments couple antiferromagnetically to their neighboring As p states through covalent bond formation. Since the itinerant holes occupy the As p states, they transmit the
coupling throughout the sample, causing parallel alignment of even distant Mn ions. The behavior has been quantified for DMSs within the Zener model [100], with the interaction Hamiltonian between the hole spin $\vec{s}$ and the Mn spin $\vec{S}$ expressed as

$$H = -N_0 \beta \vec{s} \cdot \vec{S}, \quad (17.3)$$

where $N_0$ is the concentration of the cation sites and $\beta$ is the p–d exchange integral. The product $N_0 \beta$ is usually called the exchange constant. If one simply uses the mean-field approximation [100, 101], in which the magnetizations of both carriers and Mn ions are considered to be uniform in space, one obtains an expression for the Curie temperature:

$$T_C = \frac{x N_0 S(S + 1) \beta^2 \chi_s}{3 k_B (g^* \mu_B)^2}, \quad (17.4)$$

where $\chi_s$ is the magnetic susceptibility of the free carriers (holes in this case), $g^*$ is their $g$-factor, $k_B$ is the Boltzmann constant, and $\mu_B$ the Bohr magneton. This expression gives $T_C$s in reasonable agreement with measured transition temperatures, and can be greatly refined by including a detailed description of the band structure of the underlying non-magnetic semiconductors or by going beyond the mean-field approximation to incorporate correlation effects.

Perhaps the most convincing proof that ferromagnetism in III–V and II–VI DMSs is hole-mediated comes from the demonstration that the magnetism can be controlled by controlling the number of holes electrostatically. This has been achieved by applying an electric field to a thin (5 nm) layer of (In,Mn)As on a GaAs substrate [102]. At temperatures slightly below $T_C$, application of a positive gate voltage (which removes holes from the (In,Mn)As layer) reduces the ferromagnetic hysteresis, whereas a negative gate voltage (which adds holes) increases it. The change in $T_C$ is $\sim 1$ K for a voltage of 125 V.

However, the ferromagnetism of (Ga,Mn)As is very sensitive to sample history, including the growth conditions [97] and post-growth processing [103, 104]. Since the growth dynamics certainly affect the microscopic configuration of the samples, this suggests that knowledge of the local chemical environment is crucial for understanding and modeling the properties correctly. First-principles density functional calculations have been invaluable in elucidating the detailed effects of microscopic configuration on magnetic properties, including the influence of As antisites on the ferromagnetic Curie temperature [105], and the role of the arrangement of Mn ions on transport [106]. For an excellent recent review on the status of III–V and II–VI DMSs and their role in potential spintronic applications, see [107].
17.3 III–V diluted magnetic semiconductors – (Ga,Mn)As

Figure 17.6 Schematic of the interface between zincblende structure GaAs (bottom) and rock-salt structure ErAs (top). Notice that the anionic sublattice (light spheres) is continuous across the interface.

17.3.1 Rare–earth–group–V compounds – ErAs

We mention the rare-earth–group-V compounds here even though they are not DMSs, because their rock-salt structure is symmetry-compatible with the zincblende structure, and so heterostructures with GaAs with high-quality interfaces can be achieved. A cartoon showing the continuous anionic sublattice across a representative rare-earth-As–GaAs interface is shown in Fig. 17.6. ErAs is perhaps the best studied, since its lattice parameter is closely matched to that of GaAs and (In,Ga)As alloys, and so it has been grown using molecular beam epitaxy on GaAs substrates with high-quality epitaxial metallic contacts [108]. In other growth modes, nanoparticles of ErAs have been embedded into the semiconductor matrix, yielding materials that perform well as thermoelectrics and terahertz generators [109]. We note, however, that the rare-earth arsenides are antiferromagnetic, with ordering that persists only to a few kelvin; therefore they are not likely to find technological application for their magnetic properties!

The band structure of rock-salt structure ErAs, calculated using the local density approximation plus Hubbard $U$ (LDA+$U$) method, is shown in Fig. 17.7 [110]. The compound is a semimetal that has simultaneous electron and hole free carriers. The valence band is predominantly composed of As p states and has a band maximum that is unoccupied at $\Gamma$, while the conduction band is mostly Er d in character and is occupied at X. The electronic properties, such as the structure of the Fermi surface and the concentration of free electron and hole carriers, depend sensitively on the band overlap between the conduction and valence bands. The
Er f electrons are highly localized and, owing to partial filling, provide the source of local magnetic moments that order antiferromagnetically with a Néel temperature of $\sim 4.5$ K. They are far from the Fermi energy (at $\sim 2$ eV and $< 6$ eV in the band structure plot) and do not hybridize significantly with other states throughout most of the Brillouin zone.

ErAs has interesting magnetotransport properties, with a cusp in the magnetoresistance at around 1 T (sketched in Fig. 17.8) that has been attributed to spin-disorder scattering [111]. Magnetoresistance measurements indicate a saturation of the magnetic moment at a value of $\sim 5 \mu_B$ in a field of 10 T, as expected for the f$^{11}$ Er$^{3+}$ ion surrounded by an octahedron of anions [110]. The experimental phase diagram, sketched in Fig. 17.9, indicates a field-induced antiferromagnetic (AFM) to paramagnetic (PM) phase transition.

### 17.4 Oxide-based diluted magnetic semiconductors

Clearly, for device applications it is desirable to find a DMS material with a Curie temperature at or above room temperature. In addition to the current
research aimed at understanding the origin of ferromagnetism in (Ga,Mn)As, there is also considerable exploration of novel DMS materials in the search for higher Curie temperatures. In particular, work on diluted magnetic semiconductors with oxide hosts was motivated by a prediction of above-room-temperature ferromagnetism within the Zener model for ZnO doped with 5% Mn and a large hole concentration of $3.5 \times 10^{20}$ per cubic centimeter [101]. Oxides also have the advantage over selenides and arsenides of being earth-abundant and environmentally benign. Ferromagnetism with $T_C$ above room temperature has indeed been reported in several oxide-based DMSs, including $\text{Ti}_{1-x}\text{Co}_x\text{O}_2$ [112], $\text{Zn}_{1-x}\text{Mn}_x\text{O}$ [113], and $\text{Zn}_{1-x}\text{Co}_x\text{O}$ [114]. Since many of the reports of ferromagnetism occur in insulating samples, an explanation based in bound magnetic polarons [115] is the most plausible. Results from different experiments, and indeed different computations, are widely conflicting, however, and it is still unclear whether the reports represent true ferromagnetic DMS behavior, or whether small concentrations of ferro- or ferrimagnetic impurity phases [116] or even residual magnetic ions in the magnetometers, are dominating the measurements. For a review of the conflicting experimental and theoretical results, and their possible origins, see [79]. This is clearly an area in which well-characterized
Magnetic semiconductors and insulators

bulk samples are necessary to resolve the uncertainty that results from the low concentration of magnetic ions and hence very small magnetic signals in thin films [117].

17.5 Ferromagnetic insulators

In this section we focus on the small number of well-established ferromagnetic insulators. These are scarce: For example, among simple oxides they include the f-electron system EuO [118] ($T_C = 79$ K) and the perovskite-structure transition-metal oxides YTiO$_3$ ($T_C = 29$ K), SeCuO$_3$ ($T_C = 29$ K), and BiMnO$_3$ ($T_C = 105$ K). Here we describe the origin of the ferromagnetic interactions in these well-established ferromagnetic insulators, as well as some novel materials currently under exploration.

17.5.1 Crystal-field and Jahn–Teller effects

Before we can understand the insulating transition-metal oxides, we first need to know how the energies of the transition-metal d electrons are affected by their environment in the crystal lattice. In a free atom the five 3d orbitals have the same energy, but when a transition-metal atom is surrounded by anions in a solid this is no longer the case: Those electrons that are closest to the negative anions experience an unfavorable Coulomb repulsion compared with those that are geometrically distant from the anions. The electrostatic environment provided by the anions is called the crystal field. In the octahedral crystal field provided by the oxygens in the perovskite structure, the $d_{x^2−y^2}$ and $d_{z^2}$ orbitals are raised in energy relative to the $d_{xy}$, $d_{yz}$, and $d_{xz}$ orbitals; this is illustrated in Fig. 17.10. The two sets of orbitals are often referred to by their group theoretical names, $e_g$ (for $d_{x^2−y^2}$ and $d_{z^2}$) and $t_{2g}$ (for $d_{xy}$, $d_{yz}$, and $d_{xz}$).

An additional effect occurs when the $e_g$ or $t_{2g}$ manifolds are partially occupied; we illustrate this in Fig. 17.11 for the 3d$^4$ Mn$^{3+}$ ion in an octahedral crystal field. In the perfectly octahedral environment shown in Fig. 17.11 (left), the single $e_g$ electron can occupy either the $d_{x^2−y^2}$ or the $d_{z^2}$ orbital with equal probability. In practice, the lattice will often undergo a structural distortion which lowers the energy of one of these orbitals at the expense of raising the energy of the other. Since the raised orbital is unoccupied there is a net lowering of electronic energy. This effect is called the Jahn–Teller effect: The canonical Jahn–Teller distortion is an elongation of the octahedron that lowers the energy of the $d_{z^2}$ orbital, as shown in Fig. 17.11 (right). The associated structural distortion introduces a strain energy
Figure 17.10 The five degenerate 3d atomic orbitals of the free atom are split into three-fold ($t_{2g}$) and two-fold multiplets ($e_g$) by the octahedral crystal field of the oxygen ions in the perovskite structure. The magnitude of the splitting is called the crystal-field splitting, $\Delta$.

into the lattice, and the magnitude of the Jahn–Teller distortion is determined by a balance between the strain energy cost and the electronic energy gain.

Finally, the arrangement of the local octahedral distortions within the solid – the so-called orbital ordering – can have a profound effect on the magnetic properties. For example, we have seen that the superexchange interaction between two occupied transition-metal d orbitals oriented at 180° is antiferromagnetic, whereas, if one is occupied and the other is filled, ferromagnetic coupling is obtained. We will see examples of this below.

### 17.5.2 YTiO$_3$ and SeCuO$_3$

We discuss the YTiO$_3$ and SeCuO$_3$-based systems together because they show many similarities. First, both are ferromagnetic insulators. The Ti$^{3+}$ ion in YTiO$_3$ has a single d electron which occupies one of the $t_{2g}$ orbitals and leads to a Jahn–Teller splitting. In SeCuO$_3$ the d$^9$ Cu$^{2+}$ has 9 d electrons or equivalently one d
Magnetic semiconductors and insulators

Figure 17.11 Elongation of the oxygen octahedron along the $z$ axis, and its consequent compression in the $x$–$y$ plane, lowers the energy of the $d_{z^2}$ orbital relative to the $d_{x^2-y^2}$, and of the $d_{xz}$ and $d_{yz}$ relative to the $d_{xy}$. Since the $e_g$ manifold contains only one electron in this case, there is an overall lowering in electronic energy which outweighs the strain energy introduced by the lattice distortion.

hole which occupies one of the $e_g$ orbitals and causes a large Jahn–Teller splitting. Also common to both materials is the small size of the A-site cation. Both Y$^{3+}$ and Se$^{4+}$ are smaller than required by geometric arguments to fill the A-site hole in the perovskite structure. As a result, the octahedra tilt and rotate about their axes in a manner that reduces the effective size of the A site. Both compounds adopt the so-called GdFeO$_3$ tilt pattern in which adjacent octahedra rotate in the same direction about the pseudo-cubic $x$ axis, and in alternating directions about $y$ and $z$, resulting in an orthorhombic unit cell. As a result of these rotations the transition metal–oxygen–transition metal (TM–O–TM) bond angles are reduced from 180° to $\sim$125° (SeCuO$_3$) and $\sim$140° (YTiO$_3$). In turn this causes considerable reduction in the TM 3d–O 2p overlap and hence the bandwidth.
The ferromagnetism is believed to arise from a combination of two factors. First, the same arguments that we used to show that 180° superexchange between like orbitals leads to antiferromagnetism can be used to show that 90° superexchange leads to ferromagnetic interactions. Since the TM–O–TM bond angles are considerably reduced from the ideal 180°, such 90° ferromagnetic superexchange is believed to play an important role. Consistent with this picture, when the octahedral rotations are reduced – which can be achieved by increasing the size of the A-site cation by alloying with La for YTiO₃ or Te for SeCuO₃ [119] – both systems undergo a transition from FM to AFM. In the (Se,Te)CuO₃ case there is a gradual reduction in ferromagnetic Curie temperature with increasing Te concentration, then a smooth crossover to increasing Néel temperature at \( \sim 50\% \) Te. Therefore this bond angle effect is likely the dominant physics. In the YTiO₃-based system the FM–AFM transition is abrupt and is accompanied by a change in the orbital ordering pattern, which also contributes to the change in magnetic ordering. See [120] for a detailed review.

17.5.3 BiMnO₃

Ferromagnetic ordering in insulating perovskite-structure bismuth manganite, BiMnO₃, was first reported in the 1960s [121, 122, 123], and the ferromagnetic ordering temperature of \( \sim 100 \text{ K} \) and substantial magnetization of \( \sim 3.2\mu_B \) per formula unit have been confirmed by modern studies [124, 125]. The ferromagnetism is at first surprising since the Mn valence is the same as that in perovskite-structure LaMnO₃, which is an insulating antiferromagnet.

In Chapter 13 we described the A-type antiferromagnetic ordering of LaMnO₃: Remember that the superexchange interaction between 180° filled and empty d orbitals is ferromagnetic, whereas that between two empty or two filled orbitals is antiferromagnetic. Electron counting then shows that Mn\(^{3+}\) ions in the perovskite structure should each have four ferromagnetic and two antiferromagnetic neighbors. Since the ferro- and antiferromagnetically coupled ions have different bond lengths, the strain is reduced in LaMnO₃ if the occupied orbitals order so as to align all the ferromagnetic interactions in one plane, with adjacent planes coupled antiferromagnetically to each other, as shown in Fig. 17.12(a); this results in A-type antiferromagnetism. However, analysis of Mn–O bond lengths in BiMnO₃ indicates the presence of an unusual arrangement of the occupied d orbitals, shown in Fig. 17.12(b). This is believed to be driven by the \((6s)^2\) electrons on the Bi\(^{3+}\) ions, which form a space-filling “lone pair” and introduce an additional strain into the lattice. This arrangement does not lead to cancellation of the ferromagnetic interactions, and results in a net ferromagnetism in BiMnO₃ [126].
Magnetic semiconductors and insulators

Figure 17.12 The two-dimensional orbital ordering in LaMnO$_3$ (a) is compared with the three-dimensional orbital ordering in BiMnO$_3$ (b). The bold lines represent the orientation of the occupied Mn $d_{z^2}$ orbitals in each case; these are revealed by elongations of the MnO$_6$ octahedra. The black circles show the positions of the Mn ions, and the gray circles represent the oxygens. From [126]. Copyright 2002 the American Physical Society. Reproduced with permission.

We will discuss the behavior of Bi$^{3+}$ lone pairs at length in the next chapter, on multiferroics, since they can also introduce a ferroelectric polarization into the lattice.

17.5.4 Europium oxide

Europium monoxide, EuO, is a robust ferromagnet with a Curie temperature of $\sim 70$ K, and a saturation magnetization corresponding to the expected $\sim 7\mu_B$ per Eu$^{2+}$ ion [118]. The corresponding chalcogenides, EuS and EuSe, are also ferromagnetic insulators, although with progressively lower Curie temperatures, as is the isoelectronic GdN.

The ferromagnetism is believed to originate from an indirect Eu–Eu exchange that is mediated by coupling between the occupied Eu 4f and formally empty Eu 5d states. This virtual excitation mechanism is an insulating analog to the carrier-mediated exchange that can drive ferromagnetism in conducting systems. Competing with the ferromagnetic Eu–Eu interaction is an antiferromagnetic superexchange that is mediated by the oxygen anions. Since the f electrons are tightly bound, their overlap with the oxygen 2p electrons is small, and the AFM superexchange contribution is weak in EuO. Moving down the group VI series, the interactions between the 4f electrons and the more diffuse p electrons on the larger

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و متانورژی
anions become stronger, so the AFM superexchange increases. Simultaneously the FM Eu–Eu interaction is weakened by the increase in Eu–Eu distance, and a transition to AFM ordering occurs.

The behavior can be accurately modeled using the classical Heisenberg Hamiltonian of Eq. (17.1) with only nearest-neighbor Eu–Eu interactions included.

### 17.5.5 Double perovskites

Our last example of known ferromagnetic insulators is the class of double perovskites, of which LaNi$_{0.5}$Mn$_{0.5}$O$_3$ is the prototype. In double perovskites the B-site cations, in this case Ni$^{2+}$ and Mn$^{4+}$, form an ordered checkerboard array so that each Ni ion has Mn ions as its nearest neighbors and vice versa. Since the Ni$^{2+}$ ion has both up-spin $e_g$ orbitals filled, and the Mn$^{4+}$ ion has both empty, in all cases the superexchange is between filled and empty orbitals and is ferromagnetic. Because of this, LaNi$_{0.5}$Mn$_{0.5}$O$_3$ is a ferromagnetic insulator with the rather high $T_C$ of 280 K [127].

### 17.6 Summary

In this chapter we have introduced some of the magnetic semiconductor materials that are of great current research interest. It is likely that some of these materials will result in new technological applications, both by facilitating improvements of existing device architectures and by introducing new storage and processing paradigms. The ferromagnetic semiconductors are particularly promising since they have interfaces compatible with conventional semiconductors (allowing injection of spin-polarized electrons and holes) and can be integrated using existing semiconductor processing techniques. Even in the unlikely event that no relevant applications are found, research in this field has revealed a wealth of new fundamental physics, and will undoubtedly continue to do so for years to come.

Further reading


www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و متالورژی
Multiferroics

It isn’t much fun for One, but Two
Can stick together, says Pooh

A.A. Milne, “Us Two”

In the previous chapter we mentioned the current interest in combining magnetic behavior with additional desirable properties, and looked at the examples of semiconducting transport and robust insulation. In this chapter we continue this philosophy with a discussion of the so-called multiferroics, which combine magnetic ordering with other kinds of ferroic ordering – ferroelectricity, ferroelasticity, and ferrotoroidicity. We will focus in particular on the combination of magnetism and ferroelectricity, which is appealing because of its potential for magnetoelectric response, that is, the control and tuning of magnetism using electric fields, and vice versa.

The formal definition of a multiferroic is a material that displays two or more primary ferroic orderings simultaneously [128]. The well-established primary ferroics are: the ferromagnets, which have a spontaneous magnetization that is switchable using an applied magnetic field and which we have focused on in this text so far; the ferroelectrics, with their spontaneous electric polarization that is switchable by an applied electric field; and the ferroelastics, which have a spontaneous strain that is switchable by an applied mechanical stress. Recently the ferrotoroidics have been proposed, using symmetry arguments, to complete the classes of primary ferroics [129]. Let’s begin by comparing the properties of the ferroelectrics, ferroelastics, and ferrotoroidics with the ferromagnets that we have already discussed in detail.

18.1 Comparison of ferromagnetism and other types of ferroic ordering

18.1.1 Ferroelectrics

Ferroelectric materials are characterized by a spontaneous electric polarization, $P$, which is switchable by an applied electric field, $E$. Typical ferroelectric $P$–$E$
18.1 Comparison of ferromagnetism and other types of ferroic ordering

Hysteresis loops are strikingly similar to the $M-H$ hysteresis loops in ferromagnets. Indeed when $P-E$ hysteresis loops were first observed in the material Rochelle salt in 1921, the author described them as “analogous to the magnetic hysteresis in the case of iron” and adopted the term “ferroelectricity” to emphasize the similarity [130]. There are other similarities too: In both cases the macroscopic polarization (either magnetic or electric) can be reduced to zero by the presence of domains, that is, regions of oppositely oriented (and therefore canceling) polarization within the sample. And ferromagnetic and ferroelectric polarization both decrease with increasing temperature, with a phase transition to an unpolarized (paramagnetic or paraelectric) state often occurring at high temperature.

Of course the microscopic features that lead to ferromagnetism and ferroelectricity are quite distinct – ferroelectrics have an asymmetry in charge (either ionic or electronic or both), whereas ferromagnets have an asymmetry in electronic spin. In fact we’ll see that this difference is a fundamental problem when we try to combine the two behaviors in multiferroics.

In terms of applications, in both ferromagnets and ferroelectrics the hysteresis which causes the spontaneous polarization to persist in the absence of an applied field can lead to storage applications in which the direction of either electric or magnetic polarization represents the “1” or “0” of the data bit. While magnetic materials have a huge market share, for example in the computer hard disks that we discussed in Chapter 15, ferroelectrics find some niche applications and may become more widely used in future information-storage technologies. Also, in both cases there is a coupling between the polarization order parameter and the lattice strain, which leads to piezomagnetism in ferromagnets and piezoelectricity in ferroelectrics. Piezoelectric effects tend to be larger than piezomagnetic ones, and so ferroelectrics dominate over ferromagnets in transducer and actuator technologies.

Origin of ferroelectricity. Let’s begin by describing in some detail the physics that determines whether or not anions and cations displace relative to each other to form dipole moments: a prerequisite for ferroelectricity. For a material to have a spontaneous electric polarization it must have a non-centrosymmetric arrangement of its constituent ions. In addition, to be ferroelectric, the electric polarization must be switchable, and so a transition between two stable states of opposite polarization must be accessible at known experimental fields. The ground-state structures of most ferroelectrics, therefore, can be understood in terms of a set of small atomic displacements from the centrosymmetric paraelectric phase that the structure adopts above the Curie temperature. In this section we discuss the physics that determines whether the centrosymmetric or polar structure is lower in energy. We work through this in considerable detail because it will be important later when
we explore the coexistence of magnetism and ferroelectricity in multiferroics. We’ll see that in conventional ferroelectrics the polar phase is stabilized by energy-lowering chemical bond formation, which tends to be favored by empty d orbitals and consequently the absence of magnetism!

We follow the discussion in [131]. The tendency of a material to ferroelectric instability is often described as a second-order Jahn–Teller (SOJT) effect, because it is determined by the second-order terms in the perturbative expansion of the total energy with respect to distortions from a high-symmetry reference phase. Using standard perturbation theory, the Hamiltonian can be expanded as a function of polar distortions $Q$ about the Hamiltonian for the high-symmetry reference phase, $\mathcal{H}^{(0)}$, as

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}^{(0)} + \mathcal{H}^{(1)} Q + \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{H}^{(2)} Q^2 + \cdots$$

(18.1)

with

$$\mathcal{H}^{(1)} = \frac{\delta \mathcal{H}}{\delta Q} \bigg|_{Q=0} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{H}^{(2)} = \frac{\delta^2 \mathcal{H}}{\delta Q^2} \bigg|_{Q=0}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (18.2)

$\mathcal{H}^{(1)}$ and $\mathcal{H}^{(2)}$ capture the so-called vibronic coupling [132] between the displacements of the ions from their positions in the high-symmetry phase and the electrons. The energy can similarly be expanded as a function of polar distortions about the high-symmetry reference structure [133, 134], with energy $E^{(0)}$, as

$$E = E^{(0)} + \langle 0 | \mathcal{H}^{(1)} | 0 \rangle Q$$

$$+ \frac{1}{2} \langle 0 | \mathcal{H}^{(2)} | 0 \rangle - 2 \sum_n \frac{|\langle 0 | \mathcal{H}^{(1)} | n \rangle|^2}{E^{(n)} - E^{(0)}} |Q|^2 + \cdots.$$  \hspace{1cm} (18.3)

Here $|0\rangle$ is the lowest-energy solution of $\mathcal{H}^{(0)}$ and the $|n\rangle$s are excited states with energies $E^{(n)}$. (We use the Dirac bra-ket notation that we first introduced in Chapter 6.)

The first-order term, $\langle 0 | \mathcal{H}^{(1)} | 0 \rangle Q$, describes the regular first-order Jahn–Teller theorem, which we used in Chapter 17 to understand the electronic structure of insulating transition-metal oxides. It turns out that in the case of d orbitals this term is only non-zero if $Q$ is a centrosymmetric distortion, and so it does not give rise to ferroelectricity. In systems without a first-order Jahn–Teller distortion, competition between the two second-order terms, which are of opposite sign, determines whether a non-centrosymmetric off-centering is favored or not. The first of the two second-order terms describes the short-range repulsive forces which would result if the ions were displaced with the electrons frozen in their high-symmetry configuration. Since $\langle 0 | \mathcal{H}^{(2)} | 0 \rangle$ is always positive, it always raises the energy of the
system, and so polar distortions are more likely to be favored if this term is small; this tends to be the case for closed-shell d⁰ cations without valence electrons. The second of the second-order terms, \(-\sum_n \frac{|\langle 0 | H^{(1)} | n \rangle|^2}{E(n) - E(0)} Q^2\), describes the relaxation of the electronic system in response to the ionic displacements through covalent bond formation. It is always negative and so favors ferroelectricity unless it is zero by symmetry; since \(Q\) is a polar distortion of odd parity, the product of \(\langle 0 |\) and \(|n\rangle\) must also be odd for it to survive. Ferroelectricity tends to occur when this term is large, i.e. when the numerator is large (or at least non-zero) when the denominator, \(E(n) - E(0)\), is small. This in turn occurs when the ground and lowest excited states are of different parity, for example if one of them is derived from p orbitals and the other from d orbitals. In the prototypical perovskite ferroelectrics such as BaTiO₃, which have formally d⁰ transition-metal configurations, the top of the valence band is made up largely of O 2p states, and the bottom of the conduction band of transition-metal 3d states; thus the product of the ground and low-lying excited states with \(H^{(1)}\) is even, and the matrix element \(\langle 0 | H^{(1)} | n \rangle\) is non-zero in the case when \(E(n) - E(0)\) is small, consistent with the SOJT description. Consequently, the balance between the positive and negative second-order terms usually results in off-centering for d⁰ cations, such as Ti⁴⁺ in the prototypical ferroelectric BaTiO₃.

18.1.2 Ferroelastics

A ferroelastic is defined as a material that has a spontaneous deformation that is switchable with an applied stress. Ferroelasticity occurs when a material has two or more orientation states which are identical in crystal structure in the absence of mechanical stress; a mechanical stress will then favor one or the other and cause shifting between them. A simple cartoon example is shown in Fig. 18.1. Above the ferroelastic Curie temperature the system is cubic; below \(T_C\) it is tetragonal, with the “long” axis equally likely to be oriented along any of the Cartesian axes. The two low-temperature variants in Fig. 18.1 have the same energy in the absence of mechanical stress; if a horizontal compressive stress is applied the left variant is favored over the right, which therefore transforms into the left, and vice versa.

The prototypical ferroelastic material is the intermetallic NiTi, which undergoes a transition from the cubic austenite structure at high temperature to the monoclinic martensite structure, with a strongly deformed unit cell, at low temperature. In order to prevent a large overall shape change, the low-temperature phase tends to spontaneously form twins of differently oriented ferroelastic domains, leading to a characteristic “tweed” pattern. This can be readily deformed by mechanical stress, which selects one of the possible orientations over the others. On heating, the
system regains its original austenite structure and consequently its original shape, and so is important as a *shape-memory alloy*.

While ferroelasticity can occur independently of other kinds of ferroic orderings, as in the shape-memory alloys discussed above, it also often accompanies ferroelectricity. The coupling between strain and polarization in ferroelectrics leads to a mechanical deformation that is coupled to the ferroelectric polarization. This coupling manifests in the widely used piezoelectric response of ferroelectrics. Ferroelectric ferroelastics are therefore the most well-established group of multiferroics.

### 18.1.3 Ferrotoroidics

A magnetic toroidal moment is generally associated with a “circular” or “ring-like” arrangement of spins, such as those shown in Fig. 18.2 [136]. Materials in which the toroidal moments are aligned cooperatively – so-called *ferrotoroidics* – have been proposed to complete the group of primary ferroics because of their space-time symmetry properties [137, 138, 139]. While ferroelastics are invariant under both space inversion and time reversal, and ferroelectrics and ferromagnets are invariant under only the first or the second, respectively, ferrotoroidics change under both operations (Fig. 18.3). The spontaneous toroidal moment (also called the *toroidization*) in such ferrotoroidics should then be switchable by crossed $E$ and $H$ fields, although this switching process has not yet been achieved experimentally.
18.2 Multiferroics that combine magnetism and ferroelectricity

We’ve discussed throughout this book the many and varied applications of magnetic materials, as well as exploring their rich physics. In addition, we briefly mentioned earlier in this chapter the science and technology of ferroelectrics. Multiferroics, which have simultaneous magnetic and ferroelectric ordering, have all the potential applications and basic scientific interest of their parent ferroelectric and ferromagnetic materials, as well as a whole range of new phenomena and potential technologies resulting from interactions between the two orderings. At a
Multiferroics

In the limit of weak coupling between the order parameters, one could envisage storage media in which both ferroelectric and ferromagnetic orientations could be used as data bits simultaneously, immediately doubling the storage density. Perhaps the most interesting potential applications result from strong coupling between the magnetic and ferroelectric orderings: If reorientation of the magnetization were to also cause reorientation of the electrical polarization, one could then write or detect bits with either electric or magnetic field. From a practical standpoint, if existing magnetism technologies could be tuned or controlled with electric instead of magnetic fields, large improvements in miniaturization and power consumption should be expected.

18.2.1 The contra-indication between magnetism and ferroelectricity

In Section 18.1.1 we described the competition between energy-lowering covalent bond formation and energy-raising repulsions that determines whether or not a cation will move from the center of its coordination polyhedron and create an electric dipole moment. Here we extend the discussion to understand why so few ferroelectrics are magnetic [141]. A fundamental requirement for a material to be ferroelectric is of course that it be insulating; otherwise an applied electric field will cause a current to flow rather than reorient its polarization. So let’s think about the band structure of magnetic insulators. In general, because the d shells are partially filled, the top of the valence band and the bottom of the conduction band are both composed primarily of transition-metal d states. (To be totally rigorous, these are the so-called Mott insulators; in practice, most magnetic insulators have some so-called charge-transfer behavior, in which the top of the valence band is of mixed transition-metal d–anionic p character.) If both of the band edges are primarily d-like, this means that the ground and low-lying excited states have the same symmetry. Consequently their product with \( \mathcal{H}^{(1)} \) in Eq. (18.2) is odd, and the integral \( \langle 0 | \mathcal{H}^{(1)} | n \rangle \) is zero. There is no energy-lowering bond formation that promotes off-centering, at least in this simple single-particle picture. In addition, the first of the two second-order terms tends to be large because of the presence of the d electrons in the transition-metal valence shell. As a result, in transition metals with partially filled d shells, the repulsive Coulomb interactions are stronger than any energy gain from chemical bond formation, and ferroelectric off-centering does not occur. We note, however, that second-order Jahn–Teller behavior is referred to as an effect, not a theorem, because there is no fundamental requirement that the guidelines described above always hold. Indeed there is currently an active research effort to find ways to circumvent its restrictions and create new multiferroics. (In
contrast, the first-order Jahn–Teller that we described in Chapter 17 is a theorem, since it is not a competition between two terms of opposite sign.)

18.2.2 Routes to combining magnetism and ferroelectricity

We showed above that the conventional route to ferroelectricity – off-centering of a transition-metal cation driven by hybridization with its surrounding anions – is disfavored if the cation is magnetic with a partially filled d shell. In this section we’ll look at how to get around this restriction. We won’t restrict ourselves to the ferroic magnetic orderings that have a net magnetization, but will include materials that combine ferroelectricity with any kind of magnetism; we note that the term “multiferroic” is often (somewhat incorrectly!) used to encompass all such magnetic ferroelectrics.

In order for ferroelectricity and magnetism to coexist in a single phase, either an alternative (non-d-electron) mechanism for magnetism or an alternative mechanism for ferroelectricity is needed. There has been some effort in the former direction using f-electron magnetism. Here, EuTiO$_3$ is perhaps the prototypical example: The divalent Eu$^{2+}$ ion has a large magnetic moment from its seven f electrons, and the Ti$^{4+}$ ion has a non-magnetic d$^0$ electron configuration that is favorable for ferroelectric off-centering. Bulk EuTiO$_3$ is not ferroelectric, but has a large dielectric constant that increases rapidly at low temperature, indicative of proximity to a ferroelectric phase transition. It is believed that the small size of the Eu$^{2+}$ ion and the correspondingly small lattice constant do not leave enough room for the Ti$^{4+}$ ion to off-center [142]. Increasing the lattice constant artificially, either by straining [143] or by alloying with a larger A-site ion such as Ba [142] induces the ferroelectric state. The obvious down-side of f-electron magnetism is that the tightly bound f electrons often have rather low ordering temperatures – EuTiO$_3$ orders antiferromagnetically at \( \sim 5 \) K – although this is not always the case, as in the EuO discussed in Chapter 17. The combination of conventional ferroelectricity with other types of novel magnetism, such as the diluted magnetic semiconducting behavior discussed in Chapter 17, is an open area for future research.

Most multiferroics combine conventional transition-metal d electron magnetism with an alternative mechanism for ferroelectricity – in fact, the search for off-centering mechanisms that are compatible with the existence of magnetism has contributed significantly to enhancing fundamental understanding in the ferroelectrics field. In the magnetic perovskite-structure oxides and related materials, multiferroism is most commonly achieved by exploiting so-called lone-pair stereochemical activity on the large (A-site) cation to provide the ferroelectricity, while keeping the small (B-site) cation magnetic. We are familiar with stereochemically active lone pairs from our basic chemistry classes – the lone pair on the N atom in ammonia is

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالتورژی
Figure 18.4  The stereochemically active lone pair of electrons on the N atom in the ammonia molecule – shown here as the umbrella-shaped cloud above the large central N atom – fills space and displaces the positively charged H atoms, causing NH₃ to have an electric dipole moment.

responsible for the NH₃ molecule’s electric dipole moment (Fig. 18.4). The lone pair on the Bi³⁺ ion is the mechanism for ferroelectricity in the Bi-based magnetic ferroelectrics, the most widely studied of which is bismuth ferrite, BiFeO₃ [144]. A second route to multiferroism is provided by so-called “geometrically-driven” ferroelectricity, which is a distinctly different type of off-centering that doesn’t rely on covalent bond formation and therefore is compatible with the coexistence of magnetism. In this case the ferroelectric phase transition is driven by a rotational instability of the coordination polyhedra and associated displacement of the A-site cations (Fig. 18.5). This mechanism requires an absence of three-dimensional connectivity of the polyhedra; otherwise, as one polyhedron rotates in one direction its connected neighbor rotates in the opposite direction, and the net polarization is zero. The layered antiferromagnetic ferroelectrics YMnO₃ [145, 146] and BaNiF₄ [147] fall into this class. A particularly appealing mechanism occurs in Cr₂BeO₄ [148], in which ferroelectricity is induced by the formation of a symmetry-lowering magnetic ground state – in this case a magnetic spiral – which lacks inversion symmetry. The resulting polarization is small, but since it is caused directly by the magnetic ordering, strong and possibly novel magnetoelectric interactions should be expected. The mechanism was recently rediscovered in perovskite TbMnO₃ [149] which is now considered the prototype magnetically-driven ferroelectric. Finally, when materials contain magnetic ions of the same element but with different valence charges, such as Fe²⁺ and Fe³⁺, it is possible for the charges to order in a non-centrosymmetric arrangement, as shown schematically in Fig. 18.6. The ordering arrangement is in principle switchable by an electric field, resulting in ferroelectricity; here LuFe₂O₄ has generated recent attention [150, 151]. There has also been an intriguing suggestion that the charge ordering which occurs at the so-called Verwey transition in perhaps the prototypical magnetic material magnetite, Fe₃O₄, might cause ferroelectricity [152].

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژي
18.2 Multiferroics that combine magnetism and ferroelectricity

Figure 18.5 Structure of BaNiF$_4$ in its centrosymmetric reference phase (left) and its low-temperature ferroelectric phase (right). The Ni cations are octahedrally surrounded by fluorine anions, which form sheets separated by sheets of Ba ions. Below the Curie temperature the octahedra tilt and the Ba ions displace cooperatively, resulting in a net electric dipole moment. From [147]. Copyright 2006 the American Physical Society. Reproduced with permission.

Figure 18.6 The centrosymmetric arrangement of identical atoms (top) becomes polar (bottom) when it charge-orders as shown. The arrows indicate the local dipole moments which are in principle switchable by an electric field.

18.2.3 The magnetoelectric effect

As we mentioned above, an important potential application of magnetic ferroelectrics is in electric field control of magnetism. In fact the search for a general means to control coupling between electricity and magnetism has intrigued scientists since Oersted’s discovery of electromagnetism in the early 19th century. Traditionally, however, the study of this magnetoelectric effect has been confined to academic interest, likely because of fundamental limitations on the magnitude of the linear magnetoelectric response, and the absence of materials that could provide large non-linear effects. In parallel with the renaissance of interest in multiferroics, the last few years have seen a tremendous revival of activity in the study and understanding of the magnetoelectric effect [129]. We briefly summarize the current status here.

wwwiran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و متسازی
(1) Linear magnetoelectric effect

Let’s first outline the basic physics of the linear magnetoelectric effect; for a detailed review see [129]. The term “magnetoelectric” was first introduced in 1957 by Landau and Lifshitz, who pointed out in their classic *Electrodynamics of Continuous Media* [153] that applied electric fields should in principle induce magnetizations in certain magnetically ordered crystals. The first practical proposal came two years later from Dzyaloshinskii [154] who showed, using symmetry arguments and thermodynamics, that the effect should occur in Cr$_2$O$_3$; in the same year it was realized experimentally in this material by Astrov [155].

The linear magnetoelectric effect is defined as the first-order magnetic response of a system to an applied electric field, or equivalently the electrical polarization induced by an applied magnetic field [156, 129]:

\[ P_i = \alpha_{ij} H_j \tag{18.4} \]
\[ M_i = \alpha_{ji} E_j , \tag{18.5} \]

where \( \alpha \) is the magnetoelectric tensor (in Gaussian units). On a microscopic level, the details of the mechanism leading to a linear magnetoelectric response remain to be clarified, and are likely highly material-dependent. Broadly, an electric field both shifts the positions of the magnetic cations relative to the anions and modifies the electronic wavefunctions; both result in a change in the magnetic interactions, mediated primarily by the spin–orbit coupling.

There are three important restrictions on \( \alpha \) that are relevant in the design of new magnetoelectric materials or systems. First, specific symmetry requirements must be met for \( \alpha \) to be non-zero. Second, in cases where it is symmetry allowed there are well-defined bounds on the magnitude of its components. Finally, the material must of course be electrically insulating so that it is able to sustain an electric polarization.

*Symmetry requirements.* \( \alpha \) can only be non-zero in materials which are neither time-reversal nor space-inversion symmetric. The linear magnetoelectric effect is described by a term in the thermodynamic potential, \( \Phi \), that is linear in both the magnetic and the electric fields:

\[ \Phi = -\alpha_{ij} E_i H_j . \tag{18.6} \]

Therefore, since \( E \) is a polar vector and \( H \) an axial vector, \( \alpha \) must be odd under both space inversion and time reversal, and symmetric under the product of the two operations, for the free energy to be invariant. In practice this means that in order to have non-zero linear magnetoelectric response a material must be both magnetically ordered (to lift the time-reversal symmetry) and must lack an inversion center (to lift the space-inversion symmetry). As a result all magnetic ferroelectrics have a
18.2 Multiferroics that combine magnetism and ferroelectricity

Figure 18.7 The axis of ferroelectric polarization is coupled to the magnetic easy axis or easy plane through its associated structural distortion. Reorientation of polarization by an electric field can therefore force the magnetic orientation to change.

Linear magnetoelectric response; in addition these requirements can be met in cases where a non-centrosymmetric magnetic ordering lifts the inversion center.

**Magnitude restrictions.** The magnitudes of all elements of the magnetoelectric tensor are bounded by the product of the geometric means of the corresponding elements of the magnetic and electric susceptibilities, $\chi^m$ and $\chi^e$ [157]. That is,

$$\alpha_{ij} \leq \sqrt{\chi^m_{ii} \chi^e_{jj}}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (18.7)

This represents a rather severe limitation on the magnitude of linear magnetoelectric response in single-phase materials. As we discussed above in detail in the context of multiferroics, the occurrence of simultaneously large permeability and large permittivity is chemically contra-indicated [141], and the possibilities for achieving enhanced linear magnetoelectric response through optimization of $\alpha$ in single-phase materials are rather limited.

(2) Non-linear magnetoelectric response

A promising and intriguing magnetoelectric response that is currently actively being explored in a number of multiferroic materials is the control of the magnetic domain orientation through electric-field reorientation of the polarization domains [158]. The physics is summarized in Fig. 18.7. The reduction of symmetry associated with the formation of the spontaneous electric polarization in the ferroelectric phase sets the orientation of the magnetic easy plane or axis through the magnetocrystalline anisotropy. In the example shown, the ferroelectric is tetragonally elongated along the vertical axis, and the easy plane of magnetization is the horizontal plane. Then, when the ferroelectric polarization is reoriented by 90°, as shown, the magnetic easy plane also reorients and the magnetization is forced
to rotate. Such behavior has been demonstrated in the prototypical multiferroic BiFeO$_3$, in which the antiferromagnetic easy axis has been reoriented using an applied electric field [158]. Importantly, subsequent exchange-bias coupling of a ferromagnetic metal to the antiferromagnetic BiFeO$_3$ then allowed electric field control of the ferromagnetic orientation [159]. Notice that, because the ferroelectricity is uniaxial, not unidirectional, the absolute direction of the magnetization cannot be determined through this route, and polarization reversals by 180° are not expected to reorient the magnetization.

### 18.3 Summary

We’ve seen here that the study of multiferroics is revealing a wealth of new basic physics and chemistry regarding the nature of coupling between ferroic order parameters, as well as pushing understanding of single-component ferroics to a deeper level. There are many open questions for the future. On the practical front, achieving a room-temperature ferromagnetic ferroelectric with large and robust magnetization and polarization would be a major breakthrough. At the fundamental level, the importance of the ferrotoroidal concept remains to be clarified, as does the feasibility of switching ferrotoroidal domains. Combining and coupling magnetic behavior with other desirable properties will undoubtedly keep researchers busy for many years to come.

### Further reading

Magnetic Atoms, such as Iron, keep
Unpaired Electrons in their middle shell,
Each one a spinning Magnet that would leap
The Bloch Walls whereat antiparallel
Domains converge. Diffuse Material
Becomes Magnetic when another Field
Aligns domains like Seaweed in a swell
How nicely microscopic forces yield,
In Units growing invisible, the World we wield!

John Updike, from “The Dance of the Solids,”
Midpoint and Other Poems, 1969.
Chapter 1

1.1 It’s easier to use the Biot–Savart law to calculate the field at the center of a circular coil of current.

Divide the coil into elements of arc length $\delta l$, each of which contributes a field

$$\delta H = \frac{1}{4\pi a^2} I \delta l \times \hat{u}$$

(S.1)

at the center of the coil, as shown in Fig. S.1.

Then sum over all the elements to get the total field:

$$H = \sum \frac{1}{4\pi a^2} I \delta l \sin 90^\circ.$$  

(S.2)

But $\sum \delta l = 2\pi a$ (the circumference of the coil) and $\sin 90^\circ = 1$, so

$$H = \frac{I}{2a}.$$  

(S.3)

The SI units of $H$ are A/m.

1.2(a) We’ll use the Biot–Savart law again, this time to derive the field on the axis of a circular coil. The geometry of the problem is shown in Fig. S.2.

Each element $\delta l$ contributes a field $\delta H$ at a distance $r$ from the element, where

$$\delta H = \frac{1}{4\pi r^2} I \delta l \times \hat{u}$$

$$= \frac{1}{4\pi r^2} I \delta l \sin 90^\circ$$

$$= \frac{1}{4\pi r^2} I \delta l.$$  

(S.4)
Figure S.1 Using the Biot–Savart law to derive the field at the center of a circular coil.

Figure S.2 Geometry for derivation of the field on the axis of a circular coil.

By symmetry, $\delta H_{\text{tangential}} = 0$, and $\delta H_{\text{axial}} = \delta H \sin \alpha$. So

$$\frac{\delta H_{\text{axial}}}{\sin \alpha} = \frac{1}{4\pi r^2} I \delta l.$$  \hfill (S.5)

But $r = a/\sin \alpha$, giving

$$\delta H_{\text{axial}} = \frac{1}{4\pi a^2} I \sin^3 \alpha \delta l.$$  \hfill (S.6)

Integrating around the coil, $\int \delta l = 2\pi a$, so

$$H_{\text{axial}} = \frac{I}{2a} \sin^3 \alpha$$  \hfill (S.7)

$$= \frac{Ia^2}{2(a^2 + x^2)^{3/2}}.$$  \hfill (S.8)

1.2(b) For a general off-axis point, the Biot–Savart law can still be used to obtain the magnetic field contribution, $\delta H$, from a current element, $I \delta l$, at a distance $r$ from the coil:

$$\delta H = \frac{1}{4\pi a^2} I \delta l \times \hat{u}.$$  \hfill (S.9)

$$= \frac{I \delta l \sin \theta}{4\pi r^2}.$$  \hfill (S.10)

Here $r$ is a function of $\theta$, and $H$ can be obtained numerically by an elliptic integral. Since a knowledge of magnetic fields is very important in device design, many sophisticated numerical techniques have been developed for their calculation in

www.iran-mavad.com

1.3(a) We use the expression which we derived in Solution 1.2(a) above:

\[
H_{\text{axial}} = \frac{Ia^2}{2(a^2 + x^2)^{3/2}},
\]

(S.11)

with \(a = 1 \, \text{Å} = 10^{-10} \, \text{m}\) and \(x = 3 \, \text{Å} = 3 \times 10^{-10} \, \text{m}\).

To calculate the current, \(I\), we use the fact that the angular momentum (which in general is given by \(m_e v a\)) is \(\hbar J\) s. So

\[
v = \frac{\hbar}{m_e} \frac{J \, \text{s}}{\text{kg} \, \text{m}} = \frac{\hbar}{m_e} \frac{m}{s}
\]

(S.12)

and the current is

\[
I = \frac{\text{charge}}{\text{time}}
= \frac{e}{\text{distance/speed}}
= e \frac{v}{2\pi a}
= e \frac{\hbar}{2\pi a \, m_e a}
= 2.952 \times 10^{-4} \, \text{A}.
\]

(S.13)

Then

\[
H = \frac{2.952 \times 10^{-4} \times (10^{-10})^2}{2[(10^{-10})^2 + (3 \times 10^{-10})^2]^{3/2}} \text{A m}^2 \text{m}^3
= 46675.7 \, \text{A/m} = 586 \, \text{Oe}.
\]

(S.14)

1.3(b) The magnetic dipole moment, \(\mathbf{m}\), is given by

\[
\mathbf{m} = I \mathbf{a}
= \frac{ev}{2\pi a} \pi a^2
= \frac{e v a}{2}
= \frac{ae \hbar}{2 m_e a}
= \frac{e \hbar}{2 m_e}
= 9.274 \times 10^{-24} \, \text{A m}^2 \text{or J/T}.
\]

(S.15)

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژی
This number is the Bohr magneton, $\mu_B$, and is the natural unit of magnetic moment. In cgs units, the Bohr magneton is equal to $e\hbar/2mc = 0.927 \times 10^{-20}$ erg/Oe. (Remember that the value of the elementary charge, $e$, in cgs units is $4.80 \times 10^{-10}$ esu, and the value of $\hbar$ is $6.62 \times 10^{-27}$ erg s.)

1.3(c) The magnetic dipolar energy is

$$E = -\mu_0 m \cdot H$$

$$= 1.256 \times 10^{-6} \text{ weber/(A m)} \times -9.274 \times 10^{-24} \text{ A m}^2 \times 46,675.7 \text{ A/m}$$

(S.16)

$$= -5.44 \times 10^{-25} \text{ J.}$$

(S.17)

Note that this number is very small, so it is unlikely that the parallel alignment of magnetic dipole moments in ferromagnetic materials results from a magnetic dipolar interaction.

1.4 The geometry of the problem is shown in Fig. S.3. These are known as Helmholtz coils.

In Solution 1.2(a) we derived the expression for the field produced by a current flowing in a circular coil of radius $a$, at a distance $x$ from the coil along its axis, and obtained

$$H = \frac{la^2}{2(a^2 + x^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{l}{2a} \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{a^2}\right)^{-3/2}.$$  

(S.18)

In this case, if there are $N$ turns of wire forming each coil, the total effective current is $NI$.

(a) If the coils are wound in the same direction, then the fields produced by each coil add to each other, so

$$H = \frac{NI}{2a} \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{a^2}\right)^{-3/2} + \frac{NI}{2a} \left(1 + \frac{(a-x)^2}{a^2}\right)^{-3/2}.$$  

(S.19)

If $a = 1$, then the values of the field for a range of $x$ values are as given in the following table:
That is, the field between two Helmholtz coils wound in the same direction is constant. As a consequence they are used whenever a constant magnetic field strength is needed over a large volume of space. However, they are restricted to low-field applications, because the field produced is much lower than that produced by a solenoid carrying the same current flow.

(b) If the coils are wound in the opposite direction, then the fields produced by each coil subtract from each other, so

\[ H = \frac{NI}{2a} \left[ \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{a^2}\right)^{-3/2} - \left(1 + \frac{(a-x)^2}{a^2}\right)^{-3/2} \right]. \]  

(S.20)

The field gradient, \( dH/dx \), is

\[ \frac{dH}{dx} = \frac{-3NI}{2a} \left[ x \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{a^2}\right)^{-5/2} + (a-x) \left(1 + \frac{(a-x)^2}{a^2}\right)^{-5/2} \right]. \]  

(S.21)

The numerical values of field and field gradient with \( a = 1 \) are as given in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( x )</th>
<th>( H \times N/I/2 )</th>
<th>( dH/dx \times -3N/I/2 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>( 1.0625^{-3/2} - 1.5625^{-3/2} = 0.40 )</td>
<td>( 0.25 \times 1.0625^{-5/2} + 0.75 \times 1.5625^{-5/2} = 0.46 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>( 1.25^{-3/2} - 1.25^{-3/2} = 0 )</td>
<td>( 0.5 \times 1.25^{-5/2} + 0.5 \times 1.25^{-5/2} = 0.57 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>( 1.5625^{-3/2} - 1.0625^{-3/2} = -0.40 )</td>
<td>( 0.75 \times 1.5625^{-5/2} + 0.25 \times 1.0625^{-5/2} = 0.46 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OK, so I didn’t choose good numbers for this question. I wanted to illustrate that Helmholtz coils wound in opposite directions give rise to a constant field gradient. In fact, if we had chosen \( x \) values nearer to the center of the coil, we would have found that the field gradient was approximately constant. Helmholtz coils wound in opposite directions are used whenever a constant field gradient is required, for example to exert a constant force.
Chapter 2

2.1(a) 1 erg = $10^{-7}$ J, and 1 Oe = $1/4\pi \times 10^{-3}$ A/m = $10^{-4}$ T, so

$$10000 \text{ erg/Oe} = 10000 \times 10^{-7} \text{ J/Oe} = \frac{10000 \times 10^{-7}}{10^{-4}} \text{ J/T} = 10 \text{ J/T}. \quad (S.22)$$

2.1(b) 1 in = $2.54 \times 10^{-2}$ cm. Therefore the volume of the cylinder, which is equal to $\pi r^2 l$, where $r$ is the radius and $l$ is the length, is equal to 128.704 cm$^3$, which is $1.287 \times 10^{-4}$ m$^3$.

The magnetization, $M$, is defined as the magnetic moment per unit volume. In cgs units,

$$M = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{10000 \text{ erg/Oe}}{128.704 \text{ cm}^3} = 77.70 \text{ emu/cm}^3, \quad (S.23)$$

since 1 erg/Oe = 1 emu. In SI units,

$$M = \frac{m}{V} = \frac{10 \text{ J/T}^{-1}}{1.28704 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}^3} = 77.7 \times 10^3 \left(\frac{\text{kg m}^2 \text{s}^{-2}}{\text{m}^3 \text{ kg s}^{-2} \text{A}^{-1}}\right) = 77.7 \times 10^3 \text{ A/m}. \quad (S.24)$$

2.1(c) For a current loop, the magnetic moment $m = IA$. For a solenoid with $N$ loops, the magnetic moment is $NIA$. Working in SI units,

$$10 \text{ J/T} = 100 \times I \times \pi \times (0.0127)^2 \text{ m}^2 \quad (S.25)$$

therefore

$$I = 197.3 \text{ J/(T m}^2) = 197.3 \text{ A}. \quad (S.26)$$

Chapter 3

3.1 The magnitude of the total magnetic moment of an atom is equal to $g\sqrt{J(J+1)}\mu_B$, and the component of that moment projected along the field direction is $-gM_J\mu_B$.

When $J = 1$, $\sqrt{J(J+1)} = \sqrt{2}$ and $M_J = -1, 0, 1$. Therefore for $g = 2$ the total moment is $2\sqrt{2}\mu_B$, and the component of the magnetic moment along the field direction can be $-2\mu_B, 0, or +2\mu_B$. Note that in all cases the component along the field direction is less than the total magnetic moment.

3.2(a) The electronic configuration of an Fe atom is

$$(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^6(4s)^2(3d)^6. \quad (S.27)$$
Therefore, because the transition elements give up their 4s electrons before their 3d electrons on ionization, the electronic configuration of an Fe2+ ion is 

$$(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^6(3d)^6.$$  \hspace{1cm} (S.28)

**3.2(b)**  
Hund’s first rule tells us that the electrons maximize their total spin, $S$. Therefore they arrange themselves one electron per d orbital with parallel spins before pairing up with opposite spins in the same orbital. For iron, the resulting configuration looks like this:

![Electron Configuration Diagram]

Therefore the total spin, $S = 4 \times \frac{1}{2} = 2$.

The five d orbitals have $m_l$ values of $-2, -1, 0, 1, \text{ and } 2$. Depending on which d orbital contains two electrons, the total $M_L$ can be $-2, -1, 0, 1, \text{ or } 2$. Therefore, since $M_L = -L, -L + 1, \ldots, 0, \ldots, L - 1, L$, the total orbital quantum number, $L$, must be equal to 2.

Finally, from Hund’s third rule, because the shell is more than half full, $J = L + S = 4$.

**3.2(c)**  
The Landé $g$-factor is

$$g = 1 + \frac{J(J + 1) + S(S + 1) - L(L + 1)}{2J(J + 1)}$$

$$= 1 + \frac{20 + 6 - 6}{40}$$

$$= 1.5.$$  \hspace{1cm} (S.29)

Note that, since $S = 2$ and $L = 2$, the $g$ value is exactly halfway between that for the $S = 0$ case ($g = 1$) and the spin-only case ($g = 2$).

**3.2(d)**  
The total magnetic moment $g\sqrt{J(J + 1)}\mu_B = 1.5 \times \sqrt{4 \times 5} = 6.7\mu_B$.

Since $J = 4$, $M_J = -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \text{ or } 4$. Therefore the components of the magnetic moment along the field direction, $-gM_J\mu_B$, can take the values $6\mu_B, 4.5\mu_B, 3\mu_B, 1.5\mu_B, 0, -1.5\mu_B, -3\mu_B, -4.5\mu_B, \text{ or } -6\mu_B$.

In Solution 1.3(b) we calculated the magnetic moment of a “classical” orbiting electron and obtained a result of $1\mu_B$. This is the same order of magnitude as the results obtained here.

**3.2(e)**  
If $L$ were equal to zero, then $J = S = 2$ and $g = 2$. So the total magnetic moment would be $2\sqrt{6}\mu_B = 4.9\mu_B$. This is in good agreement with the measured
value of $5.4 \mu_B$, whereas the moment we calculated using the total angular momentum ($6.7 \mu_B$) does not agree well with the experimental value. This is a manifestation of a phenomenon known as *quenching* of the orbital angular momentum, which we discuss in Section 5.3.

**Chapter 4**

4.1 The expression for the diamagnetic susceptibility in SI units is

$$\chi = -\frac{N \mu_0 Z e^2}{6 m_e} \langle r^2 \rangle_{av}. \quad (S.30)$$

Here $N$ is the number of atoms per unit volume ($= N_A \rho/A$, where $N_A$ is Avogadro’s number (the number of atoms per mole), $\rho$ is the density, and $A$ is the atomic weight), $\mu_0$ is the permeability of free space, $Z$ is the number of electrons per atom, $e$ is the electronic charge, $m_e$ is the mass of the electron, and $\langle r^2 \rangle_{av}$ is the average distance squared of the electrons from the nucleus.

For carbon, $Z = 6$ and $A = 12$ g/mol, so

$$\chi = -\frac{N \mu_0 Z e^2}{6 m_e} \langle r^2 \rangle_{av}$$

$$= -\frac{6.022 \times 10^{23} \text{ mol}^{-1} \times 2220 \text{ kg} \text{ m}^{-3}}{12 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg} \text{ mol}^{-1}}$$

$$\times \frac{1.256 \times 10^{-6} \text{ H} \text{ m}^{-1} \times 6(1.60 \times 10^{-19})^2 \text{ C}^2 \times (0.7 \times 10^{-10})^2 \text{ m}^2}{6 \times 9.109 \times 10^{-31} \text{ kg}}$$

$$= -19.33 \times 10^{-6} \text{ H} \text{ C}^2 \text{ m}^{-2} \text{ kg}^{-1}$$

$$= -19.33 \times 10^{-6}. \quad (S.31)$$

This is reasonably close to the experimental value of $-13.82 \times 10^{-6}$.

In cgs units the corresponding expression for the susceptibility is

$$\chi = -\frac{N Ze^2}{6m_ec^2} \langle r^2 \rangle_{av}$$

$$= -\frac{6.022 \times 10^{23} \text{ mol}^{-1} \times 2.22 \text{ g cm}^{-3}}{12 \text{ g mol}^{-1}}$$

$$\times \frac{6 \times (4.8 \times 10^{-10})^2 \text{ esu}^2 \times (0.7 \times 10^{-8})^2 \text{ cm}^2}{6 \times 9.109 \times 10^{-28} \text{ g} \times (3 \times 10^{10})^2 \text{ cm s}^{-2}}$$

$$= -1.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ emu}/(\text{cm}^3 \text{ Oe}). \quad (S.32)$$

www.iran-mavad.com

مرجع مهندسي مواد و م탈ورژي
For most materials, the value calculated using the classical Langevin model only shows order-of-magnitude agreement with experiment. Possible sources of the discrepancies between theory and experiment include the following:

- application of Lenz’s law (which was determined for electrical circuits) on the atomic scale
- difficulty in calculating or measuring \( \langle r^2 \rangle_{av} \); in particular, \( \chi \) depends on the choice of origin for computing \( \langle r^2 \rangle_{av} \)
- our assumption that the electrons are orbiting their nucleus; therefore, we expect a poor description of itinerant conduction electrons
- our assumption that the system is spherically symmetric.

We might expect that the use of classical mechanics would introduce errors. However, a full quantum mechanical derivation actually gives the same result.

Chapter 5

5.1 The Brillouin function, \( B_J(\alpha) \), is given by

\[
B_J(\alpha) = \frac{2J + 1}{2J} \coth \left( \frac{2J + 1}{2J} \alpha \right) - \frac{1}{2J} \coth \left( \frac{\alpha}{2J} \right). \quad (S.33)
\]

As \( J \to \infty \), \( 2J + 1 \to 2J \), and so \( (2J + 1)/2J \to 1 \). Therefore the first term tends to \( \coth \alpha \). The second term tends to the \( \coth \) of a very small number, so we can use the series expansion

\[
\coth(x) = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{x}{3} - \frac{x^3}{45} + \cdots, \quad (S.34)
\]

which is valid for small \( x \). The second term then becomes

\[
-\frac{1}{2J} \coth \left( \frac{\alpha}{2J} \right) = -\frac{1}{2J} \frac{2J}{\alpha} - \frac{1}{2J} \frac{\alpha}{6J} + \frac{1}{2J} \frac{1}{45 (2J)^3} \alpha^3 - \cdots \to -\frac{1}{\alpha} \text{ as } J \to \infty. \quad (S.35)
\]

Therefore

\[
B_J(\alpha) \to \coth(\alpha) - \frac{1}{\alpha} = L(\alpha) \text{ as } J \to \infty. \quad (S.36)
\]
As $J \to \frac{1}{2}$, $(2J + 1)/2J \to 2$, and $2J \to 1$. So, at $J = \frac{1}{2}$,

$$B_J(\alpha) = 2 \coth(2\alpha) - \coth(\alpha)$$

$$= \frac{2e^{2\alpha} + e^{-2\alpha} - e^{\alpha} + e^{-\alpha}}{e^{2\alpha} - e^{-2\alpha} - e^{\alpha} + e^{-\alpha}}$$

$$= \frac{2e^{2\alpha} + 2e^{-2\alpha} - (e^{\alpha} + e^{-\alpha})^2}{(e^{\alpha} + e^{-\alpha})(e^{\alpha} - e^{-\alpha})}$$

$$= \frac{e^{2\alpha} + e^{-2\alpha} - 2}{(e^{\alpha} + e^{-\alpha})(e^{\alpha} - e^{-\alpha})}$$

$$= \frac{(e^{\alpha} - e^{-\alpha})(e^{\alpha} - e^{-\alpha})}{(e^{\alpha} + e^{-\alpha})(e^{\alpha} - e^{-\alpha})}$$

$$= \tanh(\alpha). \quad (S.37)$$

As $\alpha \to 0$, $\coth[(2J + 1)\alpha/2J] \to 2J/(2J + 1)\alpha + (2J + 1)\alpha/3 \times 2J$ and $\coth(\alpha/2J) \to 2J/\alpha + \alpha/3 \times 2J$. So

$$B_J(\alpha) \to \frac{2J + 1}{2J} \times \frac{2J}{\alpha(2J + 1)} - \frac{1}{2J} \times \frac{2J}{\alpha} + \left(\frac{2J + 1}{2J}\right)^2 \frac{\alpha}{3} - \left(\frac{1}{2J}\right)^2 \frac{\alpha}{3}$$

$$= \frac{[(2J + 1)^2 - 1]\alpha}{12J^2}$$

$$= \frac{\alpha(J + 1)}{3J}. \quad (S.38)$$

5.2 Let’s work in SI units and use the quantum mechanical form for the paramagnetic susceptibility within the Langevin localized-moment model. Then

$$\chi = \frac{Ng^2 J(J + 1)\mu_0\mu_B^2}{3k_B T}. \quad (S.39)$$

Substituting the values $J = 1$, $g = 2$, $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}$ H/m, $\mu_B = 9.274 \times 10^{-24}$ J/T, $k_B = 1.380662 \times 10^{-23}$ J/K, and $T = 273$ K gives

$$\chi = \frac{N \times 8 \times 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \times (9.274 \times 10^{-24})^2}{3 \times 1.380662 \times 10^{-23} \times 273} \frac{H m^{-1} J^2 T^{-2}}{J K^{-1} K}$$

$$= 7.6465 \times 10^{-32} N \frac{H J}{m T^2}$$

$$= 7.6465 \times 10^{-32} N m^3. \quad (S.40)$$

www.iran-mavad.com
Since the SI susceptibility should be dimensionless, we need to obtain \( N \) as a number per m\(^3\). We’ll use the ideal gas law to do that. Using \( PV = nRT \), where \( n \) is the number of moles of atoms, with \( P = 1 \text{ atm} = 101325 \text{ N m}^{-2} \), \( R = 8.314 \text{ 41 J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1} \), \( T = 273 \text{ K} \), and the volume \( V = 1 \text{ m}^3 \) gives the number of atoms per m\(^3\):

\[
N = \frac{PV \times N_A}{RT} = \frac{101325 \times 1 \times 6.022 \times 10^{23}}{8.31441 \times 273} \text{ N m}^{-2} \text{ m}^3 \text{ mol}^{-1} \text{ J mol}^{-1} \text{ K}^{-1} = 2.688 \times 10^{25}.
\]  
(S.41)

Substituting in Eq. (S.40) gives

\[
\chi = 2.056 \times 10^{-6}.
\]  
(S.42)

Note that this is a small and positive number.

5.3(a) Remember that the magnitude of the total magnetic moment of a spin \( S \) is equal to \( g_e \mu_B \sqrt{S(S+1)} \) and the component along a specific direction is given by \( -g_e \mu_B m_s \). Here \( g_e \) is the \( g \)-factor of the electron, which is equal to 2, \( m_s \) can take values of \( \frac{1}{2} \) and \( -\frac{1}{2} \), and \( \mu_B \) is the Bohr magneton. So the total magnetic moment when \( J = 1 \) and \( g = 2 \) is \( \sqrt{3} \mu_B \) and the allowed values along the \( z \) axis are \( \pm \mu_B \).

5.3(b) Since the magnetic energy \( E = -\mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{H} \), the allowed magnetic energies are \( \mp \mu_B H \), in an applied field \( \mathbf{H} \) of magnitude \( H \).

5.3(c) In this case the partition function \( Z = \sum_i e^{E_i/k_B T} = e^{\mu_B H/k_B T} + e^{-\mu_B H/k_B T} = 2 \cosh(\mu_B H/k_B T) \). So the average magnetization per spin is

\[
\langle M \rangle = \frac{1}{Z} \sum_i m_i e^{-E_i/k_B T} = \frac{\mu_B}{Z} \left( e^{\mu_B H/k_B T} - e^{-\mu_B H/k_B T} \right) = \mu_B \tanh \left( \frac{\mu_B H}{k_B T} \right).
\]

So the total magnetization, \( \mathbf{M} \), is given by

\[
\mathbf{M} = n \mu_B \tanh \left( \frac{\mu_B H}{k_B T} \right),
\]

where \( n \) is the number of spins per unit volume.
5.3(d) For a given field, the magnetization decreases from the zero-temperature value of \( n\mu_B \) to the high-temperature value of zero as the temperature \( T \) increases from zero to \( \infty \). For \( n = 3.7 \times 10^{28} \text{ m}^{-3} \), the zero-temperature saturation magnetization is

\[
M_s = 3.7 \times 10^{28} \text{ m}^{-3} \times 9.274 \times 10^{-24} \text{ J T}^{-1} \\
= 3.43 \times 10^5 \text{ A/m}.
\]

At zero temperature the spins are perfectly aligned by an external field because there is no thermal energy available to randomize the spin directions (and thus increase the *entropy*). At infinitely high temperature there is enough thermal energy to randomize the spin directions (giving a net magnetization of zero) even in the presence of an external magnetic field.

5.3(e) As \( x \to 0 \), \( \tanh(x) \to x \); therefore as \( H \to 0 \), \( \tanh(\mu_B H/k_B T) \to \mu_B H/k_B T \). So the magnetization \( M \to n\mu_B^2 H/k_B T \).

The susceptibility is

\[
\chi = \frac{M}{H} = \frac{n\mu_B^2}{k_B} \frac{1}{T},
\]

i.e. the susceptibility is inversely proportional to temperature, and diverges only as \( T \to 0 \). Note that this is Curie’s law.

At room temperature, when \( T = 300 \text{ K} \),

\[
\chi = \frac{3.7 \times 10^{28} \text{ m}^{-3} \times (9.274 \times 10^{-24})^2 \text{ J}^2 \text{ T}^{-2}}{1.381 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J K}^{-1} \times 300 \text{ K}} = 768.11 \frac{\text{ J}^3 \text{ T}^{-2}}{\text{ m}^3}
\]

or, multiplying by \( \mu_0 \) to convert to dimensionless units, \( \chi = 0.000965 \).

5.3(f) The behavior described by this non-interacting spin system is *paramagnetic*. The system shows Curie-law behavior, and there is no phase transition to a magnetically ordered state. In order to describe ferromagnetic behavior we would have to add interactions to our model. The interactions would have to be such that the energy of the system was lower when neighboring spins were aligned parallel to each other, compared to when they were not aligned at all, or had some other (for example, antiparallel) alignment.
Chapter 6

6.1 Equating, at the origin, the slope of the magnetization described by the Langevin function (which is $\frac{1}{3} \times Nm$) with the slope of the straight line representing magnetization by the molecular field, gives

$$\frac{k_B T_C}{m\gamma} = \frac{1}{3} \times Nm. \tag{S.43}$$

So, if the Curie temperature is known, then the molecular field constant can be extracted:

$$\gamma = \frac{3k_B T_C}{Nm^2}. \tag{S.44}$$

Similarly the Weiss molecular field $H_W = \gamma M = \gamma Nm = 3k_B T_C/m$. For Ni, the magnetic moment per atom $m = 0.6\mu_B$, and the Curie temperature $T_C = 628.3$ K. Therefore

$$H_W = \frac{3k_B T_C}{m} = \frac{3 \times 3.80662 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J K}^{-1} \times 628.3 \text{ K}}{0.6 \times 9.274 \times 10^{-24} \text{ J T}^{-1}} = 4676.89 \text{ T}. \tag{S.45}$$

This is a very large field!

6.2(a) In Chapter 1, we calculated that the field generated by such an electron was $46 675.7 \text{ A/m}$, and that the magnetic moment was $\mu_B$. Assuming a “classical” electron, so that $T_C = Nm^2\gamma/3k_B$, and taking $\gamma = H/M = H/Nm$,

$$T_C = \frac{mH}{3k_B}$$

$$= \frac{9.274 \times 10^{-24} \text{ J T}^{-1} \times 46 675.7 \text{ A m}^{-1}}{3 \times 3.80662 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J K}^{-1}}$$

$$= 10 450.794 \text{ K/}(\text{T m})$$

$$= 0.0131 \text{ K} \tag{S.46}$$

(multiplying by $\mu_0 = 1.25 \times 10^{-6} \text{ H m}^{-1}$, to convert to kelvin). Note that this is a very small number!

6.2(b) In a field of 50 Oe the magnetic dipole energy would be

$$E = -\mu_0 m \cdot H$$

$$= -9.274 \times 10^{-24} \text{ J T}^{-1} \times \left( 50 \times \frac{1000}{4\pi} \right) \text{ A m}^{-1} \times 1.25 \times 10^{-6} \text{ H m}^{-1}$$

$$= -4.637 \times 10^{-26} \text{ J}. \tag{S.47}$$
At 298 K the thermal energy \( k_B T = 4.11 \times 10^{-21} \text{ J} \), which is five orders of magnitude larger than the magnetic energy! Therefore a field of around 50 Oe would have no effect on aligning electronic magnetic moments at room temperature. We can conclude that the effective internal “field” which aligns the magnetic moments of ferromagnets spontaneously is much larger than 50 Oe.

6.3 Review question

(a) For this problem it’s much easier to use the Biot–Savart law, as we did in Solution 1.2(a). This gives us the following expression for the magnetic field at a distance \( x \) from a current-carrying circular loop, on the axis of the loop:

\[
H = \frac{I}{2a} \sin^3 \alpha \quad \text{(S.48)}
\]

\[
= \frac{I a^2}{2(a^2 + x^2)^{3/2}}. \quad \text{(S.49)}
\]

To estimate the field generated by a Ni atom at its neighbor in a solid, let’s pretend that the electrons in the Ni atom are orbiting around the nucleus with a radius \( a = 1 \text{ Å} \), and that the neighboring Ni atom is a distance \( x = 3 \text{ Å} \) from the first Ni atom.

To estimate the current \( I \), we use the fact that the angular momentum of an electron (which in general is given by \( m_e v a \)) is of the order of \( \hbar \text{ J s} \). So

\[
v = \frac{\hbar}{m_e a} \text{ J s} = \frac{\hbar}{m_e a} \text{ m/s} \quad \text{(S.50)}
\]

and the current is

\[
I = \frac{\text{charge}}{\text{time}} = \frac{e}{\text{distance/speed}} = \frac{e}{2\pi a} v = \frac{e}{2\pi a} \frac{\hbar}{m_e a} = 2.952 \times 10^{-4} \text{ A}. \quad \text{(S.51)}
\]

Since there are two unpaired electrons in Ni we can double that number if we like, but since we’re just looking for an order-of-magnitude estimate it doesn’t really matter either way.
Then

\[
H = \frac{2.952 \times 10^{-4} \times (10^{-10})^2}{2[(10^{-10})^2 + (3 \times 10^{-10})^2]^{3/2}}
\]

\[
= 46675.7 \frac{A}{m} = 586 \text{ Oe.}
\]  

\text{(S.52)}

\(\text{(b)}\) Hund’s first rule tells us that the electrons maximize their total spin, \(S\). Therefore they arrange themselves one electron per d orbital with parallel spins before pairing up with opposite spins in the same orbital. For nickel, the resulting configuration looks like this:

\[
\text{Therefore the total spin } S = 2 \times \frac{1}{2} = 1.
\]

The five d orbitals have \(m_l\) values of \(-2, -1, 0, 1, \text{ and } 2\). Depending on which of the d orbitals contain only one electron, the total \(M_L\) can be \(-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \text{ or } 3\). Therefore, since \(M_L = -L, -L + 1, \ldots, 0, \ldots, L - 1, L, \) the total orbital quantum number, \(L\), must be equal to 3.

Finally, from Hund’s third rule, because the shell is more than half full, \(J = L + S = 4\).

The allowed values of magnetic moment along the field axis are given by \(gM_J \mu_B\), where

\[
g = 1 + \frac{J(J + 1) + S(S + 1) - L(L + 1)}{2J(J + 1)}
\]

\[
= 1 + \frac{20 + 2 - 12}{40}
\]

\[
= 1.25
\]  

\text{(S.53)}

and \(\mu_B\) is the Bohr magneton. Since \(J = 4\), \(M_J = -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3\), or 4. Therefore the components of the magnetic moment along the field direction can take the values \(-5\mu_B, -3.75\mu_B, -2.5\mu_B, -1.25\mu_B, 0, 1.25\mu_B, 2.5\mu_B, 3.75\mu_B, \text{ and } 5\mu_B\).

\(\text{(c)}\) The magnetic dipolar energy

\[
E = -\mu_0 m \cdot H.
\]  

\text{(S.54)}

Taking \(m = \mu_B\), for a moment aligned as parallel as possible to the field direction, \(E = 1.256 \times 10^{-6} \times 5.0 \times (-9.274) \times 10^{-24} \text{ A m}^2 \times 46675.7 \text{ A m}^{-1}\)

\[= -2.72 \times 10^{-24} \text{ J.}\]  

The energy of a moment aligned as antiparallel as possible
to the field is $+2.72 \times 10^{-24}$ J. So the difference in magnetic dipole energy between Ni atoms aligned parallel and antiparallel to each other is of the order of $10^{-24}$ J.

(d) Below the Curie temperature, $T_C$, paramagnetic materials exhibit ferromagnetic behavior. Above $T_C$, the thermal energy outweighs the energy causing ferromagnetic alignment, and the ferromagnetic ordering is destroyed. Therefore the interaction energy which tends to align magnetic moments parallel must be approximately equal to the thermal energy, $k_B T_C = 1.38 \times 10^{-23}$ J K$^{-1}$ $\times$ 631 K = $8.7 \times 10^{-21}$ J. The magnetic dipole energy is approximately four orders of magnitude smaller than the energy of the actual interaction causing the Ni atoms to align ferromagnetically!

(e) The origin of the ferromagnetic coupling in Ni is the quantum mechanical exchange interaction. The exchange interaction is a consequence of the Pauli exclusion principle. If two electrons in an atom have antiparallel spins, then they are allowed to share the same atomic or molecular orbital. As a result they will overlap spatially, thus increasing the electrostatic Coulomb repulsion. In contrast, if they have parallel spins, then they must occupy different orbitals and so will have less unfavorable Coulomb repulsion. So the orientation of the spins affects the spatial part of the wavefunction, and this in turn determines the electrostatic Coulomb interaction between the electrons.

(f) In the ferromagnetic transition metals, Fe, Ni, and Co, the Fermi energy lies in a region of overlapping 3d and 4s bands, as was shown schematically in Fig. 6.5. As a result of the overlap between the 4s and 3d bands, the valence electrons partially occupy both the 3d and 4s bands. For example, Ni, with 10 valence electrons per atom, has 9.46 electrons in the 3d band and 0.54 electrons in the 4s band. The 4s band is broad, with a low density of states at the Fermi level. Consequently, the energy that would be required to promote a 4s electron into a vacant state so that it could reverse its spin is more than that which would be gained by the resulting decrease in exchange energy. By contrast, the 3d band is narrow and has a much higher density of states at the Fermi level. The large number of electrons near the Fermi level reduces the band energy required to reverse a spin, and the exchange effect dominates. The exchange splitting is negligible for the 4s electrons, but significant for 3d electrons. In Ni, for example, the shift of the bands caused by the exchange interaction is so strong that one 3d sub-band is filled with five electrons, and the other contains all 0.54 holes. So the saturation magnetization of Ni is $M = 0.54 N \mu_B$, where $N$ is the total number of Ni atoms in the sample.

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژی
Chapter 7

7.1(a) Domains form in ferromagnetic materials in order to minimize the total energy. The principal contributions to the magnetic energy of a ferromagnetic material are the exchange energy, which tends to align the magnetic moments parallel to one another; the magnetostatic energy, which is the principal driving force for domain formation; and the magnetocrystalline and magnetostrictive energies, which influence the shape and size of domains.

A magnetized block of ferromagnetic material containing a single domain has a macroscopic magnetization and a magnetic field around it. This causes a magnetostatic energy which can be reduced by dividing the block into domains, as shown schematically in Fig. 7.3.

The tendency of the magnetization to align itself along preferred crystallographic directions in ferromagnetic materials is called the magnetocrystalline anisotropy, and the energy difference between samples magnetized along easy and hard directions is the magnetocrystalline anisotropy energy. To minimize the magnetocrystalline energy, domains form so that their magnetization points along an easy crystallographic direction. In a material with cubic symmetry, both “vertical” and “horizontal” directions can be easy axes; therefore the domain arrangement shown in Fig. 7.3(c) has a low magnetocrystalline energy.

When a ferromagnetic material is magnetized, it undergoes a change in length known as a magnetostriction. Clearly the horizontal and vertical domains cannot elongate (or constrict) at the same time, and instead an elastic strain energy term is added to the total energy. The elastic energy is proportional to the volume of the small perpendicular domains, and can be lowered by reducing the size of these closure domains, which in turn requires smaller primary domains. Of course making smaller domains introduces additional domain walls, with a corresponding increase in energy. The total energy is reduced by a compromise domain arrangement such as that shown in Fig. 7.7.

7.1(b) Figure 7.11 shows a schematic magnetization curve for a ferromagnetic material, with a sketch of the domain structure at each stage of the magnetization. The magnetic field is applied at an angle which is slightly off the easy axis of magnetization. In the initial demagnetized state, the domains are arranged such that the magnetization averages to zero. When the field is applied, the domain whose magnetization is closest to the field direction starts to grow at the expense of the other domains. The growth occurs by domain-wall motion. At first the domain-wall motion is reversible; if the field is removed during the reversible stage, the magnetization retraces its path and the demagnetized state is regained. In this region of the magnetization curve the sample does not show hysteresis.
After a while, the moving domain walls encounter imperfections such as defects or dislocations in the crystal. Crystal imperfections have an associated magnetostatic energy. However, when a domain boundary intersects the imperfection, this magnetostatic energy can be eliminated, as shown in Fig. 7.12. The intersection of the domain boundary with the imperfection is a local energy minimum. As a result, the domain boundary will tend to stay pinned at the imperfection, and energy is required to move it past the imperfection. This energy is provided by the external magnetic field.

The motion of a boundary past an imperfection is shown in Fig. 7.14. When the boundary moves as a result of a change in the applied field, the domains of closure cling to the imperfection and form spike-like domains. The spike domains persist and stretch as the applied field forces the boundary to move further, until eventually they snap off and the boundary can move freely again. The field required to snap the spike domains off the imperfections corresponds to the coercive force of the material. When the spikes snap from the domain boundary, the discontinuous jump in the boundary causes a sharp change in flux. The change in flux can be observed by winding a coil around the specimen and connecting it to an amplifier and loudspeaker. Even if the applied field is increased very smoothly, crackling noises are heard from the loudspeaker. This phenomenon is known as the Barkhausen effect.

Eventually the applied field is sufficient to eliminate all domain walls from the sample, leaving a single domain, with its magnetization pointing along the easy axis oriented most closely to the external magnetic field. Further increase in magnetization can only occur by rotating the magnetic dipoles from the easy axis of magnetization into the direction of the applied field. In crystals with large magnetocrystalline anisotropy, large fields can be required to reach the saturation magnetization.

As soon as the magnetic field is removed, the dipoles rotate back to their easy axis of magnetization, and the net magnetic moment along the field direction decreases. Since this part of the magnetization process does not involve domain-wall motion it is entirely reversible. The demagnetizing field in the sample initiates the growth of reverse magnetic domains which allow the sample to be partially demagnetized. However, the domain walls are unable to fully reverse their motion back to their original positions. This is because the demagnetization process is driven by the demagnetizing field, rather than an applied external field, and the demagnetizing field is not strong enough to overcome the energy barriers when the domain walls encounter crystal imperfections. As a result, the magnetization curve shows hysteresis, and even when the field is removed some magnetization remains in the sample. The coercive field is the additional field, applied in the reverse direction, which is needed to reduce the magnetization to zero.
7.1(c) Let’s assume that the material has a uniaxial anisotropy, so the initial domain structure is as shown in Fig. S.4.

First we’ll apply the field along the easy axis (i.e. vertically in the figure). Then the domains which are parallel to the field direction will enlarge by domain-wall motion at the expense of those that are antiparallel. Since the material is defect-free it will not exhibit any Barkhausen noise during the magnetization process. The domain-wall motion will proceed unimpeded by defects, with the field providing the energy required to rotate each individual magnetic moment out of its initial easy direction, through the hard direction and into the new easy direction. If a material were defect-free and isotropic, it would show no hysteresis. However, for our material with large magnetocrystalline anisotropy, the existence and size of hysteresis depend on the relative magnitudes of the anisotropy and the demagnetizing field at saturation. If the demagnetizing field is large enough to overcome the anisotropy, then domains will start to reform by rotation of the spins from one easy axis, through the hard direction and into the opposite direction. In this case the magnetization will be reversible until the demagnetizing field is no longer large enough to reverse spins on its own, and an external field must be applied to continue the demagnetizing process. If the anisotropy is large enough, however, the demagnetizing field will be too small to spontaneously reform domains, and the material will retain its magnetization until a large enough field is applied in the reverse direction. At this coercive field, there will be a rapid reverse of magnetization; therefore a square hysteresis loop will be formed. The area of the loop will likely be much smaller than that in the same anisotropic material containing defects. If the coercive field is too small, this would be a poor choice for a magnetic data storage medium, since the recorded data bits would not be stable in the presence of small stray fields. The material could be useful in high-frequency applications (such as transformer cores) where the direction of magnetization needs to switch rapidly.

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و ماتالورژی
If the field is aligned along the hard axis, then the change of magnetization with applied field is approximately linear, and the retentivity and coercivity are close to zero. Such a material could be used whenever a linear $M-H$ curve is required.

A polycrystalline sample will have a behavior between these two extremes.

7.1(d) Materials with high defect content show Barkhausen noise during the magnetization process. Large fields must be applied to move the domain wall past the defects and achieve saturation; therefore they are hard magnetic materials. After saturation, when the field is removed, the defects resist the reformation of domain walls; therefore these materials have large-area hysteresis loops with large remanence and high coercive field. Magnetically hard materials with many defects are used as permanent magnets.

7.1(e) At the origin, when $B$ and $H$ are both equal to zero, domains are aligned in opposite directions such that the total magnetization is zero. As the field is increased, domains aligned closest to the field direction grow by domain-wall motion at the expense of the other domains, until eventually a single domain is formed. The saturation induction is reached when the magnetization direction of this domain rotates into the direction of the applied field. As the external field is reduced to zero, the demagnetizing field causes domains of reverse magnetization to nucleate, and the net magnetization is reduced. As the field is increased in the opposite direction the domains of reverse magnetization grow. At $H_c$, the induction is zero, but there is still a small positive magnetization, since $B = H + 4\pi M = 0$, so $M = -H_c/4\pi$. At this point, prior to saturation in the reverse direction, the magnetizing field is reversed once again, and the minor hysteresis loop is traced out. When the magnetizing field is reduced from its negative value to zero, the resulting induction is less than the remanent induction, because the starting point was not the saturation induction. The field is then re-applied in the negative direction and increased to the value of the coercive field, at the starting point of the minor hysteresis loop. Just as in the initial magnetization process, domains which are aligned closest to the field direction are expanded and rotated at each stage.

7.1(f) The demagnetizing path falls progressively shorter of saturation at each field reversal. The field is not taken far enough to reach saturation and so some oppositely oriented domains remain; as a result, fewer domains are reoriented along the field direction each time. There is progressively less alignment of the domains and therefore a reduced magnetization. An alternative way of converting a ferromagnetic material into an unmagnetized state is by heating it above the Curie temperature.
7.2(a) The exchange energy cost, $\sigma_{\text{ex}}$, anisotropy energy cost, $\sigma_A$, and total energy cost of domain-wall formation are plotted in Fig. S.5.

7.2(b) The minimum energy occurs when $d(\sigma_{\text{ex}} + \sigma_A)/dN = 0$. That is, $(-k_BT_C/2) \times (\pi/a)^2(1/N^2) + Ka = 0$. Solving for $N$ gives

$$N = \frac{\pi}{a} \sqrt{\frac{k_B T_C}{2Ka}}.$$

(Note that this also corresponds to the $N$ value for which $\sigma_{\text{ex}} = \sigma_A$.) Therefore the number of layers is

$$N + 1 = \frac{\pi}{a} \sqrt{\frac{k_B T_C}{2Ka}} + 1.$$

7.2(c) Substituting the values of $K$, $T_C$, and $a$ for iron into this expression gives $N = 229$. Therefore the wall thickness $Na = 68.7$ nm, and the wall energy is 0.007 J/m$^2$. 

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسی مواد و مالوزی
Chapter 8

8.1 The susceptibility of an antiferromagnetic material in which the field is applied parallel to the magnetization direction is given by

$$\chi_{\parallel} = \frac{2N m^2 B'(J, \alpha)}{2k_B T + N m^2 \gamma B'(J, \alpha)}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (S.55)

Here $B'(J, \alpha)$ is the derivative with respect to $\alpha$ of the Brillouin function,

$$B_J(\alpha) = \frac{2J + 1}{2J} \coth \left( \frac{2J + 1}{2J} \alpha \right) - \frac{1}{2J} \coth \left( \frac{\alpha}{2J} \right).$$  \hspace{1cm} (S.56)

and $\alpha = J g \mu_B H / k_B T$.

At high temperature, $\alpha$ is very small; therefore we can expand the Brillouin function in a Taylor series about the origin to obtain

$$B_J(\alpha) \approx J + \frac{1}{3J} \alpha - \frac{[(J + 1)^2 + J^2](J + 1)}{90J^3} \alpha^3 \pm \cdots.$$ \hspace{1cm} (S.57)

So, at small $\alpha$, $B'(J, \alpha) = (J + 1)/3J$, which is a constant for a given $J$. Then

$$\chi_{\parallel} \approx \frac{2N m^2 (J + 1)/3J}{2k_B T + N m^2 \gamma (J + 1)/3J} = \frac{C}{T + \theta}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (S.58)

-- the Curie–Weiss law!

At low temperature, $\alpha$ is large and we cannot use the expansion of the Brillouin function given above. Instead, using the fact that $d(\coth \alpha) / d\alpha = -\text{cosech}^2 \alpha$, we differentiate the Brillouin function explicitly to obtain

$$B'(J, \alpha) = -\left( \frac{2J + 1}{2J} \right)^2 \text{cosech}^2 \left( \frac{2J + 1}{2J} \alpha \right) + \left( \frac{1}{2J} \right)^2 \text{cosech}^2 \left( \frac{\alpha}{2J} \right).$$ \hspace{1cm} (S.60)

As $\alpha \to \infty$, cosech(\alpha) $\to 0$, and $B'(J, \alpha) \to 0$. Therefore $\chi_{\parallel}$ also tends to zero at low temperature.

8.2 Since the $A–B$ interaction is much stronger than the $A–A$ and $B–B$ interactions, we can use the results which we derived in the notes using the Langevin–Weiss theory. We know that the expression for the susceptibility at and above the Néel temperature is

$$\chi = \frac{C}{T + \theta} = \frac{C}{T + T_N}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (S.61)
In this case, we’re told that $\chi(T_N) = \chi_0$, so we can solve for the constant, $C$, to obtain $C = 2T_N\chi_0$. Then, at $T = 2T_N$, $\chi = C/(2T_N + T_N) = 2T_N\chi_0/3T_N = \frac{2}{3}\chi_0$.

Below $T_N$, for the field applied perpendicular to the magnetization, $\chi$ is a constant equal to its value at $T_N$. Therefore at both $T = 0$ and $T = T_N/2$, $\chi = \chi_0$.

9.1 Review question 1

(a) Ferrimagnets behave similarly to ferromagnets, in that they exhibit a spontaneous magnetization below some critical temperature, $T_C$, even in the absence of an applied field. Their permeabilities and susceptibilities are large and positive, and they concentrate magnetic flux within themselves. Both tend to form domains in the spontaneously magnetized phase. However, the detailed shape of the ferrimagnetic magnetization curve is distinctly different from that of the ferromagnetic curve. The reason for this is that the local arrangement of magnetic moments is quite different. In ferromagnets, adjacent moments align parallel, whereas ferrimagnets consist of two interpenetrating sublattices with opposite alignment of magnetic moments, but the magnetizations of the two sublattices are different, giving a net magnetic moment. Most ferrimagnets are ionic solids, whereas most ferromagnets are metals, so the electrical properties of ferrimagnets are quite different from those of ferromagnets. This results in a wide range of important applications for ferrimagnets, in situations requiring magnetic insulators.

(b) The measured spontaneous magnetization of magnetite is plotted as a function of temperature in Fig. S.6. The results agree well with the classical ($J = \infty$)
magnetization curve predicted for ferromagnets within the Langevin–Weiss theory! In this case the agreement is fortuitous, but historically it led Weiss and his co-workers to believe that magnetite was a ferromagnetic material, and gave them great confidence in the localized-moment theory.

(c) The saturation magnetization is defined as the magnetic moment per unit volume. Therefore we’ll calculate the magnetic moment of a unit cell of Fe$_3$O$_4$, and divide by the unit cell volume, which is $(0.839 \times 10^{-9})^3$ m$^3$. In ferrites, the magnetic moments of the Fe$^{3+}$ ions cancel out, so the net magnetic moment arises from the Fe$^{2+}$ ions only. Each Fe$^{2+}$ ion has a magnetic moment of $4\mu_B$, since there are six 3d electrons, two of which occupy the same orbital with their spins opposed, leaving four uncompensated parallel spins. There are eight Fe$^{2+}$ ions per unit cell, so the total magnetic moment per unit cell is $32\mu_B$. Then the saturation magnetization is

$$M_s = \frac{32 \times 9.27 \times 10^{-24}}{(0.839 \times 10^{-9})^3} \frac{\text{Am}^2}{\text{m}^3}$$

$$= 5.0 \times 10^5 \text{A/m}. \quad (S.62)$$

(d) In part (c) we found that the saturation magnetization of Fe$_3$O$_4$ is $5.0 \times 10^5$ A/m. In order to increase the magnitude of $M_s$, we need to replace some fraction of the Fe$^{2+}$ ions with divalent metal ions that have a larger magnetic moment. Our only option from the 3d transition series is Mn$^{2+}$, which has a moment of 5 Bohr magnetons per atom (as opposed to 4 in Fe$^{2+}$). If we assume that the unit cell size does not change when we substitute Mn$^{2+}$ ions for Fe$^{2+}$ ions, then we can calculate the number of Bohr magnetons per unit cell which this saturation magnetization corresponds to:

Number of Bohr magnetons per unit cell = \frac{M_s \times \text{unit cell volume}}{\mu_B}

$$= \frac{(5.25 \times 10^5 \text{A/m})(0.839 \times 10^{-9})^3 \text{m}^3}{9.27 \times 10^{-24} \text{Am}^2}$$

$$= 33.45 \text{Bohr magnetons per unit cell.}$$

Let the fraction of Mn$^{2+}$ ions be $x$, and the fraction of Fe$^{2+}$ ions be $(1 - x)$. Then, since there are eight divalent ions per unit cell,

$$8[5x + 4(1 - x)] = 33.45,$$  \hspace{1cm} (S.63)

so $x = 0.181$. Therefore if we replace 18.1% of the Fe$^{2+}$ ions in Fe$_3$O$_4$ by Mn$^{2+}$ ions, the saturation magnetization will be increased to $5.25 \times 10^5$ A/m.
The saturation flux density $B_s = \mu_0 M_s = 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{H/m} \times 5.25 \times 10^5 \text{A/m} = 0.66 \text{T}$. To convert to cgs units we use the fact that 1 gauss = $10^{-4}$ teslas, so the saturation flux density is $6.6 \times 10^3$ gauss.

(e) Ferrimagnets are related to antiferromagnets, in that the exchange coupling between adjacent magnetic ions leads to antiparallel alignment below some critical temperature. Both are paramagnetic above the critical temperature, although the details of their susceptibility curves differ. Below the critical temperature antiferromagnets have no net magnetization. In contrast, ferrimagnets have a net magnetization because the magnetization of one sublattice is greater than that of the oppositely oriented sublattice.

(f) The bonding in ferrimagnetic materials is largely ionic, with transition-metal cations having oxygen anions as their nearest neighbors. The d electrons on the transition-metal ions obey Hund’s rules, and occupy the five d orbitals singly with spins parallel, before pairing up.

We make the assumption that it is energetically favorable for the valence electrons on the cations to undergo some degree of covalent bonding with those on the $\text{O}^{2−}$ ions. Since the $\text{O}^{2−}$ ion has a filled shell of electrons, this can only take place by donation of electrons from the $\text{O}^{2−}$ ion into the vacant orbitals of the cation. As an example, let’s assume that our left-most cation is an up-spin Mn$^{2+}$ ion, as shown in Fig. 8.14. Then, since all the Mn orbitals contain an up-spin electron, covalent bonding can only occur if the neighboring oxygen donates its down-spin electron. This leaves an up-spin electron in the oxygen p orbital, which it is able to donate to the next cation in the chain. (In Fig. 8.14 this is another Mn$^{2+}$ ion.) By the same argument, bonding can only occur if the electrons on the next cation are down-spin. We see that this oxygen-mediated interaction leads to an overall antiferromagnetic alignment between the cations, without requiring the quantum mechanical exchange integral to be negative!

Since the superexchange interaction relies on overlap between the O 2p orbitals and the neighboring transition-metal cations, which is largest in linear cation–oxygen–cation chains, the strength of the superexchange interaction is reduced if the cation–oxygen–cation bond angle is changed from 180°.

9.2 Review question 2

(a) The electronic configuration of an Fe atom is

$$(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^6(4s)^2(3d)^6.$$
configuration of an Fe$^{3+}$ ion is

$$(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^6(3d)^5.$$  

The electronic configuration of a Ni atom is

$$(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^6(4s)^2(3d)^8.$$  

The nickel ion in NiO is a divalent cation with electronic configuration

$$(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^6(3d)^8.$$  

(b) The cations in tetrahedral sites are bonded via O$^{2-}$ ions to cations in octahedral sites. Although the inter-ion interactions in ferrites are largely ionic, the energy of the system can be lowered by some degree of covalent bonding. When covalent bonding occurs, the up-spin (say) cation in the tetrahedral site overlaps with the down-spin 2p electron in the oxygen orbital pointing towards the cation. This leaves the up-spin 2p orbital to bond with the neighboring cation in the octahedral site. A covalent bond with the second cation can only be formed if this cation is down-spin. This mechanism, driving antiferromagnetic ordering in predominantly ionic materials, is called superexchange. Since the iron ions are equally distributed between the octahedral and tetrahedral sites, there are equal numbers of up- and down-spin iron ions, and the net magnetic moment from the iron ions is zero.

(c) Remember that the saturation magnetization is the magnetic moment per unit volume. Therefore we need to work out the magnetic moment and the volume of one unit cell, and take the ratio.

The volume of the unit cell is $(8.34 \times 10^{-10})^3$ m$^3$ since the unit cell is cubic.

Hund’s first rule tells us that the electrons maximize their total spin, $S$. Therefore they arrange themselves one electron per d orbital with parallel spins, before pairing up with opposite spins in the same orbital. For Ni$^{2+}$, the resulting configuration looks like this:

```
↑↑↑↑↑↑↑↑
```

Since the 3d transition elements have strong quenching of the orbital angular momentum, we only need to consider the spin contribution to the magnetic moment, which we can see from the figure is $2\mu_B$ per atom along the direction of applied field. Finally, since there are eight Ni$^{2+}$ ions per unit cell, the magnetic moment per unit cell is $16\mu_B$.  

www.iran-mavad.com

مرجع مهندسي مواد و مталورژی
Solutions to selected exercises

So

\[
M_s = \frac{16\mu_B}{(8.34 \times 10^{-10})^3 \text{ m}^3} \\
= \frac{16 \times 9.27 \times 10^{-24} \text{ A m}^{-2}}{(8.34 \times 10^{-10})^3 \text{ m}^3} \\
= 2.56 \times 10^5 \text{ A/m.}
\]

(d) Now that we are talking about Ni metal, we have to worry about overlapping bands. If the number of free electrons per atom is 0.54, then the number of s electrons per Ni atom must also equal 0.54. But we know that the number of valence electrons in a Ni atom is 10. Therefore the number of d electrons per Ni atom must just be equal to the difference – that is, 9.46.

(e) Since it takes 5 electrons per Ni atom to completely fill the up-spin band, the remaining 4.46 electrons per atom go into the down-spin band. Therefore the net magnetic moment per Ni atom, which is just the number of up-spin electrons minus the number of down-spin electrons times \( \mu_B \), is 0.54\( \mu_B \). The density of states of ferromagnetic nickel is shown below.

(f) There are four atoms per unit cell in the fcc structure (one at the center of the unit cell, eight corner atoms which are shared between eight unit cells, and six face-centered atoms each shared between two unit cells). Therefore the magnetic moment per unit cell is 4 \( \times 0.54\mu_B \). Since the volume of the unit cell is \((3.52 \times 10^{-10})^3 \text{ m}^3\), the saturation magnetization of elemental nickel is

\[
M_s = \frac{2.16\mu_B}{(3.52 \times 10^{-10})^3 \text{ m}^3} = 4.59 \times 10^5 \text{ A/m.}
\]
Note that the saturation magnetization of Ni is greater than that of nickel ferrite, even though the number of Bohr magnetons per atom is smaller. This is because all of the atoms in elemental Ni contribute to the magnetization, whereas many of the atoms in nickel ferrite are either non-magnetic or have magnetic moments which cancel with those of neighboring ions. Different applications for Ni and nickel ferrite result from their different electrical properties. Nickel ferrite is an insulator and therefore could be useful for high-frequency applications, such as transformer cores. Also, because of its anisotropy, it could be a good storage medium in magnetic memory applications. Nickel, with its higher saturation magnetization, would be a better material for permanent magnets and electromagnets.

Chapter 11

11.1 Remember that, in all cases, the stable domain structure minimizes the total energy of the system.

If a material had no magnetocrystalline anisotropy, then there would be no preferred direction of alignment of the magnetic moments. Therefore it would be possible to eliminate the magnetostatic energy without domain formation using the spin configuration shown in Fig. S.7(a). This would be a favorable arrangement since adjacent spins are still parallel, optimizing the exchange energy, and magnetostrictive energy is not introduced.

A large uniaxial anisotropy causes the magnetic moments to be aligned along a single crystallographic direction. So, 90° domain walls and perpendicular domains of closure are unlikely. A probable domain structure is shown in Fig. S.7(b).

The magnetostrictive energy can be minimized by increasing the volume of the main domains which have their magnetizations parallel to a certain easy direction,
as shown in Fig. S.7(c). This arrangement concentrates the elastic energy into the small flux-closure domains which are forced to strain to fit the deformation of the main domains.

If the sample is smaller than the domain-wall thickness, then domain formation becomes energetically unfavorable. In this case the particle will consist of a single domain, as shown in Fig. S.7(d).

11.2 In a single-domain particle, the magnetization lies along an easy direction which is determined by magnetocrystalline and shape anisotropies. If a field is applied in the direction opposite to the magnetization (but still in the easy direction), then the particle cannot respond by domain-wall motion, and the magnetization must *rotate* through the hard direction in order to reverse its direction. Anisotropy forces tend to hold the magnetization in the easy direction; therefore the coercivity is large. A square hysteresis loop is produced. If the field is applied along a hard direction, the magnetization rotates into the field direction when a large enough field is applied, but rotates fully back to the easy direction when the field is removed. Therefore there is no hysteresis. Small-particle magnets are used for recording media where a high coercivity is required. Usually needle-shaped particles are used in order to maximize the shape anisotropy and increase the coercive force. The particles must be aligned with their easy axes parallel to the direction in which the write field will be applied.

Chapter 13

13.1 Review question

(a) This is the same problem as Exercise 1.3(a). Using the Biot–Savart law we obtain the following expression for the field generated on the axis of a circular coil:

\[ H_{\text{axial}} = \frac{Ia^2}{2(a^2 + x^2)^{3/2}}. \]

Using the given value for angular momentum we can evaluate the current, and obtain a value for the field,

\[ H = 46 675.7 \text{ A m}^{-1} = 586 \text{ Oe}. \]

(b) This is the same problem as Exercise 1.3(b). The magnetic dipole moment,
\( \mathbf{m} \), is given by

\[
\mathbf{m} = I A
\]

\[
= 9.274 \times 10^{-24} \text{ A m}^2 \text{ or J T}^{-1},
\]

i.e. 1 Bohr magneton.

(c) The field lines around the dipole, oriented with its north pole upwards, are shown below:

\[
\text{If a second dipole is directly above the first, the field from the first dipole will tend to align it vertically, with its north pole pointing upwards. If a second dipole is positioned horizontally from the original dipole, it will again be aligned vertically, but with its north pole pointing downwards.}
\]

(d) The magnetic ordering is shown below:

Here the black atoms are in the front-most plane, the gray atoms are in the middle plane, and the white atoms are in the back plane.
(e) If the second dipole is aligned parallel to the first, its energy will be lowered by an amount
\[
E = -\mu_0 m \cdot H
\]
\[
= 1.256 \times 10^{-6} \text{ Wb A}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-1} \times -9.274 \times 10^{-24} \text{ A m}^2 \times 46675.7 \text{ A m}^{-1}
\]
\[
= 5.44 \times 10^{-25} \text{ J}
\]
If it is aligned antiparallel its energy will be raised by the same amount. This magnetic energy corresponds to a temperature \( T = E/k_B = 0.0394 \) K. Note that this number is very small, so it is unlikely that the parallel alignment of magnetic dipole moments in ferromagnetic materials results from a magnetic dipolar interaction.

(f) The electronic structures of the Mn ions are:
\[
\text{Mn}^{3+} [\text{Ar}] (3d)^4,
\]
\[
\text{Mn}^{4+} [\text{Ar}] (3d)^3.
\]
Assuming spin-only magnetic moments, then the Mn\(^{3+}\) ion has a maximum magnetic moment along the field direction of \( 4\mu_B \), and the Mn\(^{4+}\) ion has a corresponding magnetic moment of \( 3\mu_B \).

(g) There is an excellent discussion of the relationship between chemical bonding and magnetic ordering in manganites in the landmark 1955 paper by Goodenough. [63]. Here we follow Goodenough’s argument.

(i) In LaMnO\(_3\), all of the manganese ions are Mn\(^{3+}\), with four 3d electrons. Following Hund’s rule, the four 3d electrons each occupy a different 3d orbital so that they can align parallel to each other. This leaves one vacant 3d orbital. The oxygen-mediated coupling between neighboring manganese ions can be either ferromagnetic or antiferromagnetic, depending on whether empty or filled manganese d orbitals point towards the oxygen. Figure S.8(a) illustrates the antiferromagnetic superexchange which results when both Mn\(^{3+}\) ions have an empty d orbital pointing towards the oxygen anion. In this case, the left-most Mn\(^{3+}\) ion is up-spin, and so the up-spin oxygen 2p electron donates into the empty 3d orbital in order to optimize its Hund’s rule coupling to the manganese ion. This leaves the down-spin oxygen p electron available to donate into the right-hand manganese. The Hund’s rule coupling is optimized if this second Mn\(^{3+}\) ion is down-spin, that is, antiferromagnetically aligned with the first manganese ion.

The opposite situation, where the oxygen anion links one empty and one filled Mn 3d orbital, is shown in Fig. S.8(b). As before, the up-spin oxygen electron donates into the empty d orbital of the up-spin Mn\(^{3+}\) ion. The down-spin oxygen electron can only interact with its neighboring filled Mn 3d orbital by covalent bond formation, which can only occur if the Mn 3d electron has the opposite (i.e. up-) spin. Therefore the second manganese ion must have the same spin orientation as the first, resulting in ferromagnetic coupling.
Valence-bond theory tells us that the single empty d orbital in a Mn$^{3+}$ ion will hybridize with the Mn 4s and 4p orbitals to form four square planar dsp$^2$ empty orbitals. Since the Mn ions in LaMnO$_3$ are octahedrally coordinated, this means that only $\frac{3}{2}$ of the bonds to oxygen can be empty; hence each Mn ion is bonded ferromagnetically to four of its neighbors, and antiferromagnetically to two. Since the ferromagnetic bonds are longer than the antiferromagnetic bonds, orbital ordering occurs to minimize the elastic strain in the lattice. The result of this is the so-called A-type antiferromagnetic ordering, that is, ferromagnetic planes of Mn ions with adjacent planes aligned antiferromagnetically to each other.

(ii) In CaMnO$_3$, all of the ions are Mn$^{4+}$, with two empty d orbitals per Mn ion. These two empty d orbitals hybridize with the Mn 4s and 4p orbitals to form six octahedral d$^2$sp$^3$ empty orbitals. Therefore all bonds to oxygen can be made by empty Mn d orbitals, resulting in the so-called G-type antiferromagnetism, in which all bonds are antiferromagnetic.

The magnetic dipole energy calculated above is the equivalent of the order of hundredths of kelvin, five orders of magnitude smaller than the actual ordering temperature of CaMnO$_3$. This implies that the superexchange interaction mechanism just described, which is responsible for the antiferromagnetic ordering in CaMnO$_3$, is correspondingly five orders of magnitude stronger than the dipole–dipole interaction between neighboring Mn ions.

(h) Adjacent Mn$^{3+}$ and Mn$^{4+}$ ions are coupled by the so-called double-exchange mechanism, which results in ferromagnetic coupling [66]. The total energy of the Mn$^{3+}$–Mn$^{4+}$ pair can be lowered if the extra 3d electron on the Mn$^{3+}$ ion is allowed to resonate or tunnel between the two ions in the pair. (This is analogous to the lowering in energy of the ground state of an ammonia molecule by inversion tunneling.) Electron tunneling can only occur if the magnetic moments on both Mn ions are aligned parallel to each other, so that the up-spin (say) electron on the Mn$^{3+}$ ion is able to transfer to the Mn$^{4+}$ ion and be parallel to the 3d electrons on its new host. This mechanism is called double exchange, because the electron in fact transfers from the Mn$^{3+}$ ion to the intermediate oxygen, simultaneously with the transfer of an electron from the O$^{2-}$ ion to the Mn$^{4+}$ ion.
References


www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالتورژی
References


References


www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و مالورژی


References


www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و م탈ورژي


Index

adiabatic demagnetization, 63
amorphous, 183, 194, 195
Ampère, 7
  Ampère’s law, 7, 8
angular momentum, 7, 22, 25, 27, 29, 32–35, 38, 40, 192
  orbital, 22, 26–27, 158
  quenching, 54–55
  spin, 22, 30
anisotropic magnetoresistance, 158–159, 185
anisotropy, 107, 135–143, 147, 149, 150, 182, 187, 193
  exchange, 111
  induced, 141–143
  magnetocrystalline, 84, 85, 90, 123, 135–138, 145, 147, 182
  shape, 139–141, 150, 181
anisotropy, surface, 154
antiferromagnetism, 15, 17, 96–112
  compensated, 171
  DMs, 201, 204, 205
  ErAs, 207, 208
  GMR, 160, 163, 186
  superexchange, 107, 108, 125, 166
  susceptibility, 101, 103, 106
  transition metals, 109
  Weiss theory, 101–107
areal density, 177, 178, 181, 186
band gap, 126
band structure, 49, 56–60, 73, 74, 77, 109, 126, 161, 206, 207
barium ferrite, 124
barium nickel fluoride, 224
Barkhausen effect, 90
BiMnO$_3$, 213
Biot–Savart law, 8–10
bismuth, 15, 38
bismuth ferrite, 224
bismuth manganese, 213
Bitter method, 79
Bloch wall, 85, 88
Bohr atom, 25
Bohr magneton, 29, 31, 60, 126, 149, 206
Boltzmann distribution, 49
bound magnetic polarons, 200
Bragg diffraction, 98
Brillouin function, 52, 68, 69, 104, 105, 118, 150
Brillouin zone, 109f
chromium, 76, 77f, 109f, 109, 182, 183
  alloys, 182, 183, 185
  multilayers, 160
chromium dioxide, 181
Clebsch–Gordan series, 33
cobalt, 69, 73, 76, 138
core coercive field, 91, 124, 136, 141, 150, 171, 182
  force, 88
core coercivity, 19, 111, 124, 147, 148, 150, 181, 182, 184, 193, 194, 195
  coherence, 197, 201, 202–203
cold-rolling, 142
colloidal magnetoresistance, 112, 164–167
  compact disks, 196
compass, 6, 121
compensation point, 118, 119, 125, 126, 194, 195
core electrons, 56, 57, 77
correlation energy, 77
Coulomb energy, 34, 70, 71, 107
  interaction, 23, 31, 70
  potential, 23
  Coulomb’s law, 4
  covalent bonding, 108
critical current, 44, 46
critical field, 44
critical size, 145, 148, 187
critical temperature, 42, 43
crystal field, 210
Index

Curie law, 52, 53, 102, 115
temperature, 48, 54, 66, 67, 68, 69, 105, 115, 118, 119, 122, 193, 205, 206, 208
damping, 188
data rate, 178, 188
data storage, 217
de Broglie relation, 101
decoherence, 202
demagnetizing factor, 140, 141
demagnetizing field, 82, 84, 86, 87, 91, 139–141, 147, 193, 194
density storage, 177, 178, 182, 186
density functional theory, 77
density of states, 59–62, 73, 126
diamagnetic, 34, 35
effect, 38, 48
materials, 15, 38, 41, 42
susceptibility, 39–41, 62
diamagnetism, 22n1, 38–46
dielectric, 185
digital magnetic heterostructures, 204
digital video disks, 196
diluted magnetic semiconductors, 197, 201–206, 223
Dirac equation, 30
Dirac notation, 72
disk storage, 177–183
dislocations, 88, 91
domain wall, 79, 80, 85–87, 145
energy, 145
motion, 88, 147
domains, 79–92
magnetization, 87–92
observation, 79–80, 189, 191
of closure, 84, 85, 88
rotation, 136, 142, 147
theory, 65, 81–85
double exchange, 167
double perovskite, 126
double perovskites, 215
easy axis, 82, 83, 84, 86, 87, 90, 135, 136, 137, 138, 141, 142, 143, 148, 150
direction, 84, 135, 136, 137, 147, 148, 149, 171, 182
eddy currents, 120, 122, 184, 188
electric field, 40, 55, 157
electrical resistance, 42, 43, 112, 122, 125, 203
electromagnet, 91
electromagnetic induction, 6, 38, 179, 183, 185
electron gas, 58, 60, 61, 157
electron spin, 29–31
electron–electron interactions, 26, 31–32, 70, 71, 77
ErAs, 198, 206–208
EuO, 214, 223
europium titanate, 223
exchange, 77, 182, 198
bias, 169–173
-bias coupling, 111, 186
carrier-mediated, 199
coupling, 110, 113
direct, 199
double, 200
energy, 73, 74, 81, 82, 84, 85, 145
integral, 70, 107, 108, 206
interaction, 70, 73, 74, 76, 171
splitting, 75, 76
superexchange, 199, 213, 214
Zener, 200
excited states, 55, 70
Faraday effect, 92, 189, 191, 202
Faraday’s law, 6, 40
Fermi energy, 57, 59, 73, 126
gas, 110
level, 61, 62, 73, 76, 109, 161
surface, 109
wavevector, 110
ferrimagnetic, 15
magnetization, 113, 118
materials, 18, 19, 111, 194
applications, 113, 120
susceptibility, 113
ferrimagnetism, 113–126
Weiss theory, 114–119
ferrites, 113, 116, 120–126, 181, 182
core memories, 122–124
cubic, 120–122, 184
hexagonal, 124
mixed, 122
ferroelastics, 216, 219–220
ferroelectric, 216–219
ferroelectricity geometric, 224
magnetically induced, 224
ferromagnetic, 15
materials, 19, 48, 53
magnetization, 87–92
metals, 57, 135, 156, 158, 159
ferromagnetic semiconductors, 210
ferromagnetism, 65–77
collective-electron theory, 73–76
semiconductor, 197, 205, 206, 209
Weiss theory, 66–73
ferrotoroidic, 216, 220–221
forced magnetization, 106
free atoms, 22n1, 22–27, 38, 39, 40, 56, 57
free electrons, 58–62, 109, 110, 157
(Ga,Mn)As, 197, 204–206
g-factor, 31, 36, 54, 201, 206
gadolinium, 137
alloy, 194
garnet, 91, 125–126, 191, 195
www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسي مواد و متالورژی
Index

GdFeO$_3$, 212
giant Faraday rotation, 202
giant magnetoresistance, 153, 159–186

half-metallic, 162, 164
antiferromagnet, 126
ferromagnet, 162
Hall effect, 157, 203
Hamiltonian, 69, 71, 72
hard
axis, 82, 83, 143
direction, 135, 147, 148
magnetic material, 19, 91, 124
Heisenberg, 215
Hamiltonian, 199
helium atom, 69, 70–73
Helmholtz coils, 12
hexagonal ferrites, 120, 124
hexagonal structure, 84, 137, 138, 201
high frequency, 120, 125, 184
holes, 75, 201, 205, 206, 215
homogeneous distribution, 182
Hund’s rules, 34–35, 70, 73, 108
hydrogen
atom, 23–27, 32
molecule, 42
hysteresis, 17, 87–91, 111, 137, 148, 150, 217
hysteresis loop, 18–19, 65, 123, 141, 186
square, 123, 147, 181
induction, 14–15, 16, 19
residual, 19
satisfaction, 19
inter-particle interactions, 150–152, 182, 183
iron, 69, 73, 76, 77, 83, 84, 99, 109, 135
alloys, 76, 141, 142, 143, 194, 195
anisotropy constants, 138
ferrite, 121, 181
multilayers, 160
oxide, 15, 59, 181, 182
particles, 150
irradiation, 143
Jahn–Teller, 211, 218, 223
jj coupling, 35
Josephson effect, 46
Kerr effect, 173, 189–191, 193, 195
Kerr rotation, 195
LaMnO$_3$, 213
Langevin, 39n1
function, 63, 67, 68, 104, 149
theory, 39, 49–52, 54, 55, 63, 66, 69, 73, 150
Larmor precession, 202
laser, 193, 195
Lenz’s law, 6, 39, 43
ligand, 108
linear magneto-electric effect, 226
liquid helium, 63
localized moments, 53, 76, 101, 113, 204, 205, 206
lodestone, 121
lone pair, 213, 223
longitudinal recording, 182
Lorenz force, 157
luteinit ferrite, 224
magnetic annealing, 141–142
magnetic data storage, 177–188
magnetic dipole, 11, 12, 14, 15, 22, 23, 26, 27, 28, 34, 35, 52, 53, 68, 73, 79, 80, 81, 90
magnetic field, 3, 4–10, 12, 14–18, 179, 183
critical, 44
magnetic flux, 6, 12, 15, 40, 42, 43, 48, 80, 122, 181, 184
magnetic pole, 3, 4–5, 6, 7, 10, 12
magnetic quantum number, 25, 26–27
magnetic recording, 141, 177–188
magnetic resonance, 46
magnetite, 79, 80, 88, 120
magnetization curves, 17, 44, 82, 84, 87, 88, 90, 91, 113, 118, 125, 135, 137, 141, 142, 150
magnetization reversal, 91, 119, 149, 171, 181, 193, 194
magnetization rotation, 106, 137, 147
magneto-electric, 216, 221, 225–228
linear, 226
non-linear, 227
symmetry, 226
magneto-optic
effect, 80, 92, 189–192
recording, 192–196
magneto-optics, 189–196, 202
magnetoplumbite, 124
magnetoresistance, 156–167, 177, 179, 185, 186, 203, 208
anisotropic, 158–159, 185
colossal, 164–167
from spontaneous magnetization, 159
giant, 159–186
in normal metals, 157
magnetoresistance, colossal, 156
magnetoresistance, giant, 153, 156
magnetostatic energy, 81–82, 84, 85, 87, 88, 145, 191
magnetostatics, 3–12
magnetostriiction, 84–85, 124, 137, 153, 185
manganese, 76, 109
chalcogenides, 201
ions, 35, 120, 166, 201, 202, 204, 205, 206
oxide, 15, 97, 99, 107
manganites, 164, 166
many-body effects, 31, 69, 107
many-electron atoms, 31–32
Meissner effect, 43
microwave applications, 125
minor hysteresis loop, 19
MnO, 15, 97, 99, 107
molecular beam epitaxy, 204, 205
molecular field constant, 53, 66, 68, 101, 118
molecular field theory
  antiferromagnets, 101–107
  ferrimagnets, 114–119
  ferromagnets, 66–73
  paramagnets, 52–54
monopole, 4
multiferroic, 216–228
  contra-indication, 222

Nb3Sn, 46
nearest neighbor interactions, 101, 103, 115
Néel temperature, 96, 98, 99, 101, 103, 208
Néel wall, 87
neutron diffraction, 97–101
neutrons, 173
NiAs structure, 201
nickel, 69, 73, 75, 76, 79, 84, 109, 135, 147
NiTi, 219
non-integer magnetic moments, 73, 76
north pole, 4, 5, 139
nuclear charge, 32
nuclear magnetic moments, 110
numerical methods, 10

Oersted, 6
optical storage, 192–196
orbital ordering, 211
orbital quantum number, 25, 26, 33
overcoat, 183
oxides, 208
oxygen, 48, 62–63

paramagnetic, 15
  material, 201
  materials, 42, 48, 62, 66
  applications, 63
paramagnetism, 38, 48
  Langevin theory, 49–52
  Pauli, 55–56
particulate media, 181–182
Paschen–Back effect, 37
Pauli exclusion principle, 32, 70, 71, 107
Pauli paramagnetism, 49, 54, 55–62, 73, 74
permalloy, 141, 184
permanent magnets, 18, 77, 91, 124, 136
permeability, 16–18, 19, 43, 49, 122, 142, 181, 184, 185
  of free space, 4, 15
perovskite, 112, 126, 156, 164, 166
perpendicular recording, 182
perturbation theory, 218
piezoelectricity, 217, 220
piezomagnetism, 217
plane-polarized light, 80, 190, 193
pole strength, 4
principal quantum number, 25, 31
quantum computing, 202
quantum cryptography, 202
quantum number, 24–25, 27
quenching, 54

RAMAC, 177
rare earths, 48, 54, 77, 110, 125, 126, 136, 194, 195, 198, 207
recording heads, 167, 178, 179, 183–186
recording media, 152, 181
relativistic effects, 30
remanence, 91, 120, 123, 124, 150
retentivity, 19
reversible magnetization, 88, 91, 137
rigid-band model, 73, 76
RKKY, 109–110, 160, 200
Rochelle salt, 217
roll anisotropy, 141, 142
Russell–Saunders coupling, 32–34, 35
saturation induction, 19
saturation magnetization, 17, 19, 63, 64, 75, 76, 90, 122, 124, 126, 136, 138, 141, 147, 184
scattering, 157, 158, 159
neutron, 98–99
spin-dependent, 160, 186
spin-disorder, 204, 208
Schrödinger equation, 22–27, 30, 31, 58, 71
second-order Jahn–Teller, 218, 222
SeCuO3, 211
selection rules, 36
semiconductor laser, 195
series expansion, 51, 52, 138
shape anisotropy, 139–141
shape memory alloy, 220
single-domain particle, 111, 145–148
  experimental evidence, 147
Slater–Pauling curve, 76
small particle magnetism, 145–148, 152, 177
soft magnetic materials, 19, 91, 122, 184
south pole, 4, 5, 7, 139
spherical harmonics, 24, 26
spike domains, 88
spin quantum number, 30
spin valve, 111, 173, 186
spin wave, 109
spin–orbit coupling, 32–35, 36, 136, 137, 143, 158
spin-polarized luminescence, 197
spin-polarized transport, 201, 203–204
spinel, 118, 121–122, 124
  inverse, 121
  normal, 121
spintronics, 197
spontaneous magnetization, 66–69, 73, 76, 96, 103, 105, 113, 116, 118, 137, 147, 159, 194
SQUIDs, 46
strain, 147
strain energy, 85
stress annealing, 143
superconducting magnets, 46
superconductivity, 42–46, 126

www.iran-mavad.com
مرجع مهندسی مواد و مالتورژی
superexchange, 107–108, 125, 166, 199, 213, 214
superparamagnetism, 148–150, 187
susceptibility, 16–18, 19, 43, 48, 66, 96, 141, 206
  antiferromagnetic, 101–107
diamagnetic, 39–41
ferrimagnetic, 114–116
paramagnetic, 49–52, 60–62
switching, 164, 181
  speed, 187
time, 124, 188
symmetry
  crystal, 98
  magnetocrystalline anisotropy, 138
  spatial, 71, 107
  spin, 107

terbium, 137
terbium manganite, 224
thin film, 87, 143, 152, 184, 172, 190
  media, 182
  tilt boundary, 87
toroidal moment, 220
torque, 40, 105
transformer, 91
twist boundary, 86

type I superconductor, 44
type II superconductor, 44
underlayer, 183
units in magnetism, 3, 19–20
valence, 167, 205
  bonding, 107
electrons, 35, 55, 56, 57, 58, 73, 76, 108
Verwey transition, 224
vortex state, 44
Weiss theory, 52–54, 66, 73, 101–107, 114–119
X-ray scattering, 98
X-rays, 173
YTiO3, 211
yttrium manganite, 224
Zeeman effect
  anomalous, 31, 35–37
  normal, 27–29
Zeeman splitting, 192, 201–202
Zener, 200
Zener model, 167, 206
(Zn,Mn)Se, 197, 201–204